

ETERNUS SF



ETERNUS SF

Express V15.1/

Storage Cruiser V15.1/

AdvancedCopy Manager V15.1



Migration Guide

B1FW-5958-03ENZ0(00)
August 2012

Preface

Purpose

This manual describes how to upgrade to this version from the previous version for the following Storage Management Software ETERNUS SF products (hereafter referred to as "ETERNUS SF series"):

- ETERNUS SF Express (hereafter referred to as "Express")
- ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser (hereafter referred to as "Storage Cruiser")
- ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager (hereafter referred to as "AdvancedCopy Manager")

Intended Readers

This manual is intended for persons who upgrade to this version from a previous version of these software products, or who perform the upgrade process (mainly for system administrators).

For migration procedures described in this manual, it is assumed that the reader understands the installation environment of the previous version level and knows the backup and the restoration methods for the operational environment of the previous version level.

If you newly install the software, refer to "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

Organization

This manual is composed as follows:

[Chapter 1 Overview](#)

This chapter provides an overview of upgrade.

[Chapter 2 Changes from Previous Version](#)

This chapter describes the contents changed from the previous version of products.

[Chapter 3 Upgrade for Express Version 14.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Express Version 14.x.

[Chapter 4 Upgrade for Express Version 15.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Express Version 15.x.

[Chapter 5 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x/14.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x and 14.x.

[Chapter 6 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x.

[Chapter 7 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x and 14.x.

[Chapter 8 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x](#)

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x.

[Chapter 9 Troubleshooting](#)

This chapter describes the method for troubleshooting if a problem occurs during the Upgrade Installation process.

[Chapter 10 Configuration import](#)

This chapter describes the command used during the configuration information update during the upgrade process.

[Appendix A Operation for Previous Version Environment](#)

This appendix describes the operations performed in the environment of the previous version level.

Appendix B Install parameter

This appendix describes the install parameter file and the details of each install parameter.

Notation

The names, abbreviations, and symbols shown below are used in this manual.

Operating systems

Formal name	Abbreviation	
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition	Windows Server 2003	Windows
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Standard (32-bit)(64-bit) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Standard without Hyper-V(TM) (32-bit) (64-bit) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Enterprise (32-bit)(64-bit) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Enterprise without Hyper-V(TM) (32-bit) (64-bit) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Datacenter (32-bit)(64-bit) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 Datacenter without Hyper-V(TM) (32-bit) (64-bit)	Windows Server 2008	
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Foundation Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Standard Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Enterprise Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Datacenter	Windows Server 2008 R2	
Microsoft(R) Windows(R) XP Professional Edition Microsoft(R) Windows(R) XP Home Edition	Windows XP	
Windows Vista(R) Home Basic Windows Vista(R) Home Premium Windows Vista(R) Business Windows Vista(R) Enterprise Windows Vista(R) Ultimate	Windows Vista	
Windows(R) 7 Home Basic Windows(R) 7 Home Premium Windows(R) 7 Professional Windows(R) 7 Enterprise Windows(R) 7 Ultimate	Windows 7	
Solaris(TM) 9 Operating System	Solaris 9	Solaris or Solaris OS
Oracle Solaris 10	Solaris 10	
Oracle Solaris 11	Solaris 11	
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) AS (v.4 for x86) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) AS (v.4 for EM64T)	RHEL-AS4	Linux
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) ES (v.4 for x86) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) ES (v.4 for EM64T)	RHEL-ES4	
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 5 (for x86) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 5 (for Intel64)	RHEL5	

Formal name	Abbreviation	
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 6 (for x86) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 6 (for Intel64)	RHEL6	
SUSE(R) Linux Enterprise Server 11 (for x86) SUSE(R) Linux Enterprise Server 11 (for EM64T)	-	
HP-UX 11.0 HP-UX 11i v1 HP-UX 11i v2 HP-UX 11i v3	HP-UX	
AIX 5L(TM) V5.1 AIX 5L(TM) V5.2 AIX 5L(TM) V5.3 AIX(R) V6.1 AIX(R) V7.1	AIX	
VMware(R) Infrastructure 3 Foundation VMware(R) Infrastructure 3 Standard VMware(R) Infrastructure 3 Enterprise	VMware Infrastructure 3	VMware
VMware vSphere(R) 4 Essentials Kit VMware vSphere(R) 4 Essentials Plus Kit VMware vSphere(R) 4 Standard Edition(TM) VMware vSphere(R) 4 Standard Plus Data Recovery VMware vSphere(R) 4 Advanced Edition(TM) VMware vSphere(R) 4 Enterprise Edition(TM) VMware vSphere(R) 4 Enterprise Plus Edition(TM)	VMware vSphere 4	
VMware vSphere(R) 5 Essentials Kit VMware vSphere(R) 5 Essentials Plus Kit VMware vSphere(R) 5 Standard Edition(TM) VMware vSphere(R) 5 Standard Plus Data Recovery VMware vSphere(R) 5 Enterprise Edition(TM) VMware vSphere(R) 5 Enterprise Plus Edition(TM)	VMware vSphere 5	

Oracle Solaris might be described as Solaris, Solaris Operating System, or Solaris OS.

Related products with Fujitsu Storage System ETERNUS and Storage Management Software ETERNUS SF

Formal name	Abbreviation		
ETERNUS DX60/DX60 S2 ETERNUS DX80/DX80 S2 ETERNUS DX90/DX90 S2	-	ETERNUS DX series	ETERNUS Disk storage system
ETERNUS DX410 ETERNUS DX440	ETERNUS DX400 series	ETERNUS DX400/DX400 S2 series	
ETERNUS DX410 S2 ETERNUS DX440 S2	ETERNUS DX400 S2 series		
ETERNUS DX8100 ETERNUS DX8400 ETERNUS DX8700	ETERNUS DX8000 series	ETERNUS DX8000/DX8000 S2 series	
ETERNUS DX8100 S2 ETERNUS DX8700 S2	ETERNUS DX8000 S2 series		
ETERNUS2000 ETERNUS4000 ETERNUS8000	-		
Web GUI of ETERNUS DX series	ETERNUS Web GUI		

Formal name	Abbreviation
ETERNUSmgr	

Software products

Formal name	Abbreviation
Microsoft(R) Internet Explorer(R)	Internet Explorer
Mozilla(R) Firefox(R)	Firefox
Microsoft(R) Cluster Service	MSCS
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) Failover Clustering	WSFC
Microsoft(R) Exchange Server	Exchange Server
Microsoft(R) SQL Server(TM)	SQL Server
PRIMECLUSTER Global Disk Services	GDS
PRIMECLUSTER Global File Services	GFS
Symfoware Server Enterprise Extended Edition Symfoware Server Enterprise Edition	Symfoware
VMware(R) ESX(R)	VMware ESX
VMware(R) ESXi(TM)	VMware ESXi
VMware(R) vCenter(TM) Server	VMware vCenter Server or vCenter Server

Manuals

Formal name	Abbreviation
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide	ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Migration Guide	ETERNUS SF Migration Guide
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Web Console Guide	ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide for Copy Control Module	ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module
ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Cluster Environment Setup Guide	ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Messages	ETERNUS SF Messages
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Event Guide	ETERNUS SF Event Guide
ETERNUS SF Express / ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser / ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Glossary	ETERNUS SF Glossary

Others

- In this manual, "ETERNUS4000" does not include ETERNUS4000 models 80 and 100.

Export Administration Regulation Declaration

This document may contain specific technologies that are covered by International Exchange and International Trade Control Laws. In the event that such technology is contained, when exporting or providing the document to non-residents, authorization based on the relevant law is required.

Trademarks

- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Windows Vista, and Internet Explorer are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other name may be trademarks of their respective owners.
- Linux is a trademark or registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.
- Red Hat, RPM and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- SUSE is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc, in the United States and other countries.
- HP-UX is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company in the United States and other countries.
- AIX and AIX 5L are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- VMware, VMware logo, Virtual SMP and VMotion are the registered trademarks or trademarks of VMware, Inc in the US and in other countries.
- All other trademarks and product names are the property of their respective owners.

Shipment date and revision history

Shipment date	Revision	Manual code
January 2012	1	B1FW-5958-01ENZ0(00) / B1FW-5958-01ENZ2(00)
January 2012	1.1	B1FW-5958-01ENZ0(01) / B1FW-5958-01ENZ2(01)
February 2012	1.2	B1FW-5958-01ENZ0(02) / B1FW-5958-01ENZ2(02)
March 2012	1.3	B1FW-5958-01ENZ0(03) / B1FW-5958-01ENZ2(03)
April 2012	2	B1FW-5958-02ENZ0(00) / B1FW-5958-02ENZ2(00)
May 2012	2.1	B1FW-5958-02ENZ0(01) / B1FW-5958-02ENZ2(01)
August 2012	3	B1FW-5958-03ENZ0(00) / B1FW-5958-03ENZ2(00)

Notes

- No part of this manual may be reproduced without permission.
- This manual is subject to change without advance notice.

Copyright

Copyright 2012 FUJITSU LIMITED

Update history

Content of update	Updated section	Revision
Modified and added the explanation for the install parameter file.	4.1.3, 5.1.3, 5.3.3, Appendix B	2.1
Added Oracle Solaris 11, AIX V6.1 and AIX V7.1 in the operating systems.	Notation in Preface	3
Added the explanation of changes for Version 15.1	2.1.1, 2.2.1, 2.3.1	

Content of update	Updated section	Revision
Added the explanation of upgrade procedure in a cluster environment.	8.3.2, 8.3.3, A.6, A.14	
Added the explanation of upgrade procedure from Express Version 15.x to Version 15.1.	Chapter 4	
Added the explanation of upgrade procedure from Storage Cruiser Version 15.x to Version 15.1.	Chapter 6	
Added the explanation of upgrade procedure from AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x to Version 15.1.	Chapter 8	

Manual organization and reading suggestions

Manual organization

The following table describes the Manual organization of Express, Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager.

When to read	Related manuals (abbreviated)	Related products (NOTE)			Explanation
		EXP	SC	ACM	
Before installation	Quick Reference	Yes	Yes	Yes	This manual is unique for each product. The following manuals are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Express Quick Reference - Storage Cruiser Quick Reference - AdvancedCopy Manager Quick Reference
	Overview	No	No	Yes	This manual is unique for each product.
During installation	Installation and Setup Guide	Yes			This manual is common for all products.
	Cluster Environment Setup Guide	No	Yes		This manual is common for Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager.
	Migration Guide	Yes			This manual is common for all products.
During operation	Operation Guide	Yes	Yes	Yes	This manual is unique for each product. The following manuals are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Express Operation Guide - Storage Cruiser Operation Guide - Storage Cruiser Operation Guide for Optimization Option - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Solaris) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Linux) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for AIX)
	Operation Guide for Copy Control Module	Yes	No	Yes	This manual is common for Express and AdvancedCopy Manager.

When to read	Related manuals (abbreviated)	Related products (NOTE)			Explanation
		EXP	SC	ACM	
	Web Console Guide	Yes			This manual is common for all products.
Anytime	Event Guide	Yes	No		This manual is common for Express and Storage Cruiser.
	Messages	Yes			This manual is common for all products.
	Glossary	Yes			This manual is common for all products.

NOTE: "EXP" indicates Express, "SC" indicates Storage Cruiser and "ACM" indicates AdvancedCopy Manager.

How to read manuals

Please use the following table to find the most useful information in the Express, Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager manuals to answer your inquiry.

Purpose	Related products (NOTE)	Manual	Main contents	How to read
Acquiring a product overview and basic operation knowledge	EXP	- Express Quick Reference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Product overview - Installation decision - Overview of the necessary tasks from installation to first use - Main functions - Linkable applications - Procedure overview for Advanced Copy of ETERNUS Disk storage system 	Please read if you want to acquire a fundamental knowledge of the product and its operation in order to decide to install it or not.
	SC	- Storage Cruiser Quick Reference		
	ACM	- AdvancedCopy Manager Quick Reference		
		- AdvancedCopy Manager Overview		
Deciding if a version upgrade is required	common	- ETERNUS SF Migration Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Incompatibilities with previous version - Notes and cautions about version upgrade - Version upgrade procedure 	Please read if you want to upgrade from a previous version.
Installing and correctly operating the product Setting up operating environment depending on purpose	common	- ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Operating environment - Installation procedure - Setup procedure - Uninstallation procedure 	Please read if you want to install and setup the product.
	SC, ACM	- ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Supported cluster software - Installation procedure for a clustered system - Setup procedure for a clustered system - Uninstallation procedure for a clustered system 	Please read if you want to install and setup the product on a clustered system.

Purpose	Related products (NOTE)	Manual	Main contents	How to read
Administration and operation of the installed system	EXP	- Express Operation Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Starting and stopping the software - Device monitoring - Data copy inside the storage system - Necessary tasks after an architectural modification of the system as well as product maintenance 	Please read if you want to start or shutdown the system, monitor the operation status, do backup/restore operations, etc.
	SC	- Storage Cruiser Operation Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Starting and stopping the software - Device monitoring - Necessary tasks after an architectural modification of the system as well as product maintenance - Command reference 	
		- Storage Cruiser Operation Guide for Optimization Option	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Operating environment construction - Operating status monitoring - Necessary tasks after an architectural modification of the system as well as product maintenance - Command reference 	
	EXP, ACM	- ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Starting and stopping the software - Data backup/restore inside the storage system 	
	ACM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Solaris) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Linux) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX) - AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for AIX) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Necessary tasks after an architectural modification of the system as well as product maintenance - Command reference 	
	common	- ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Operating environment - Screen layout description 	

Purpose	Related products (NOTE)	Manual	Main contents	How to read
Dealing with messages issued by the software	common	- ETERNUS SF Messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Messages and their explanations - Parameter (variable information) description - System action - Countermeasures 	Please read if you want a practical way of investigating and dealing with messages issued by the software.
Dealing with events issued by the software	EXP, SC	- ETERNUS SF Event Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Phenomenon of event - Countermeasures 	Please read if you need to find a practical way of investigating and dealing with events.
Researching the meaning of specific terms related to the products and other important terms	common	- ETERNUS SF Glossary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Product specific terminology explanation - Explanation of important terminology appearing in the manual - Synonyms and related terms - Proper form of abbreviated terms 	Please read if you want to learn the meaning of important terms, product specific terms or abbreviations used in the manuals.

NOTE: "EXP" indicates Express, "SC" indicates Storage Cruiser and "ACM" indicates AdvancedCopy Manager.

Contents

Chapter 1 Overview.....	1
1.1 Upgrade patterns.....	1
1.2 What is the Upgrade Installation.....	2
1.3 Products which can be upgraded with the Upgrade Installation.....	2
1.4 Notes on upgrade.....	3
1.4.1 Common notes for all products.....	4
1.4.2 Notes for Express.....	4
1.4.3 Notes for Storage Cruiser.....	4
1.4.4 Notes for AdvancedCopy Manager.....	5
Chapter 2 Changes from Previous Version.....	6
2.1 Changes for Express.....	6
2.1.1 Changes for Version 15.1.....	6
2.1.2 Changes for Version 15.0.....	7
2.2 Changes for Storage Cruiser.....	10
2.2.1 Changes for Version 15.1.....	10
2.2.2 Changes for Version 15.0.....	15
2.2.3 Changes for Version 14.2 or earlier.....	22
2.3 Changes for AdvancedCopy Manager.....	25
2.3.1 Changes for Version 15.1.....	25
2.3.2 Changes for Version 15.0.....	29
2.3.3 Changes for Version 14.2 or earlier.....	35
Chapter 3 Upgrade for Express Version 14.x.....	37
3.1 Before installation.....	37
3.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	37
3.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	38
3.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation.....	38
3.1.4 Symfoware verification.....	39
3.1.5 Database size estimation.....	39
3.1.6 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	39
3.2 Upgrade Installation.....	40
3.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	50
3.3.1 Restoration from previous version.....	50
3.3.2 Import of the Configuration information.....	51
3.3.3 Setting up user account.....	51
3.3.4 Setting up for using Web Console.....	52
3.3.5 Set account information that can access to ETERNUS Disk storage system.....	52
3.3.6 License registration.....	52
3.3.7 Redefinition of the missing information.....	52
3.3.8 Change password of access user for repository database.....	54
3.3.9 Resuming operations.....	54
Chapter 4 Upgrade for Express Version 15.x.....	55
4.1 Upgrade for Express (for Windows).....	55
4.1.1 Before installation (for Windows).....	55
4.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	56
4.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows).....	57
4.2 Upgrade for Express (for Linux).....	58
4.2.1 Before installation (for Linux).....	58
4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	58
4.2.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	59
4.2.1.3 Symfoware verification.....	60
4.2.1.4 Database size estimation.....	60
4.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	60

4.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Linux).....	60
4.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Linux).....	63
4.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version.....	63
4.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information.....	65
4.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database.....	66
4.2.3.4 Resuming operations.....	66
Chapter 5 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x/14.x.....	67
5.1 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager.....	67
5.1.1 Before installation.....	67
5.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	67
5.1.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	69
5.1.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation.....	69
5.1.1.4 Symfoware verification.....	70
5.1.1.5 Database size estimation.....	70
5.1.1.6 Registration of access user for repository database (for Solaris, Linux).....	70
5.1.1.7 Kernel parameter tuning (for Solaris, Linux).....	70
5.1.1.8 Confirmation of Port number for Communication service (for Solaris, Linux).....	71
5.1.1.9 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	71
5.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	72
5.1.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	82
5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	85
5.1.4.1 Restoration from previous version.....	85
5.1.4.2 Import of the Configuration information.....	87
5.1.4.3 Setting up user account.....	87
5.1.4.4 Setting up for using Web Console.....	87
5.1.4.5 Set account information that can access to ETERNUS Disk storage system.....	88
5.1.4.6 License registration.....	88
5.1.4.7 Redefinition of the missing information.....	88
5.1.4.8 Change password of access user for repository database.....	89
5.1.5 Resuming operations.....	90
5.2 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent.....	90
Chapter 6 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x.....	92
6.1 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager (for Windows).....	92
6.1.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation.....	92
6.1.1.1 Before installation (for Windows).....	92
6.1.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	93
6.1.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows).....	95
6.1.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation.....	96
6.1.2.1 Before installation.....	96
6.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node).....	97
6.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node).....	99
6.1.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node).....	100
6.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node).....	101
6.1.2.6 Start ETERNUS SF Manager.....	101
6.2 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager (for Solaris, Linux).....	102
6.2.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	102
6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	102
6.2.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	104
6.2.1.3 Symfoware verification.....	104
6.2.1.4 Database size estimation.....	104
6.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	105
6.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	105
6.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Solaris, Linux).....	108
6.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version.....	108
6.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information.....	110
6.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database.....	111

6.2.4 Resuming operations.....	111
6.3 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent (for Windows).....	111
6.4 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent (for Solaris, Linux, HP-UX).....	114
Chapter 7 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x.....	116
7.1 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager.....	116
7.1.1 Before installation.....	116
7.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	116
7.1.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	117
7.1.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation.....	118
7.1.1.4 Symfoware verification.....	118
7.1.1.5 Database size estimation.....	118
7.1.1.6 Registration of access user for repository database (for Solaris, Linux).....	118
7.1.1.7 Kernel parameter tuning (for Solaris, Linux).....	119
7.1.1.8 Confirmation of Port number for Communication service (for Solaris, Linux).....	119
7.1.1.9 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	119
7.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	120
7.1.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	130
7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	133
7.1.4.1 Restoration from previous version.....	133
7.1.4.2 Import of the Configuration information.....	134
7.1.4.3 Setting up user account.....	135
7.1.4.4 Setting up for using Web Console.....	135
7.1.4.5 License registration.....	135
7.1.4.6 Redefinition of the missing information.....	135
7.1.4.7 Change password of access user for repository database.....	136
7.1.5 Resuming operations.....	137
7.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.....	137
7.2.1 Backup of repository data.....	137
7.2.2 Backup of the management information.....	137
7.2.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows).....	138
7.2.4 Uninstallation of the previous version.....	138
7.2.5 Installation of this version.....	139
7.2.6 Restoration of repository data.....	139
7.2.7 Changing server information.....	140
7.2.8 Restoration of the management information.....	140
7.2.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows).....	140
7.2.10 Updating the version information.....	141
7.3 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.....	141
7.3.1 Before installation.....	142
7.3.1.1 Selection of the install program.....	142
7.3.1.2 Backup of the environment setting files.....	142
7.3.1.3 Available disk space verification.....	143
7.3.1.4 Incompatible software uninstallation.....	143
7.3.1.5 Symfoware verification.....	143
7.3.1.6 Database size estimation.....	143
7.3.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	144
7.3.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	150
7.3.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	151
7.3.4.1 Restore of the environment setting files.....	151
7.3.4.2 Reconfiguration of device information.....	152
7.3.4.3 License registration.....	153
7.3.5 Resuming operations.....	153
Chapter 8 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x.....	154
8.1 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager (for Windows).....	154
8.1.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation.....	154
8.1.1.1 Before installation (for Windows).....	154

8.1.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	155
8.1.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows).....	157
8.1.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation.....	158
8.1.2.1 Before installation.....	158
8.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node).....	159
8.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node).....	161
8.1.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node).....	162
8.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node).....	162
8.1.2.6 Start ETERNUS SF Manager.....	163
8.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager (for Solaris, Linux).....	164
8.2.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	164
8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version.....	164
8.2.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	165
8.2.1.3 Symfoware verification.....	165
8.2.1.4 Database size estimation.....	166
8.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level.....	166
8.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	166
8.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	170
8.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version.....	170
8.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information.....	171
8.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database.....	172
8.2.4 Resuming operations.....	172
8.3 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Windows Server 2008 environment).....	172
8.3.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation.....	172
8.3.1.1 Before installation (for Windows Server 2008 environment).....	172
8.3.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows Server 2008 environment).....	173
8.3.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows Server 2008 environment).....	176
8.3.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation.....	176
8.3.2.1 Before installation.....	177
8.3.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node).....	177
8.3.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node).....	180
8.3.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node).....	181
8.3.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node).....	181
8.3.2.6 Start Managed Server transaction.....	181
8.4 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Windows Server 2003 environment, Solaris, Linux).....	182
8.4.1 Backup of repository data.....	182
8.4.2 Backup of the management information.....	182
8.4.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows Server 2003 environment).....	183
8.4.4 Uninstallation of the previous version.....	183
8.4.5 Installation of this version.....	183
8.4.6 Restoration of repository data.....	184
8.4.7 Changing server information.....	184
8.4.8 Restoration of the management information.....	185
8.4.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows Server 2003 environment).....	185
8.4.10 Updating the version information.....	185
8.5 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Windows).....	186
8.5.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation.....	186
8.5.1.1 Before installation (for Windows).....	186
8.5.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows).....	186
8.5.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation.....	188
8.5.2.1 Before installation.....	188
8.5.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node).....	189
8.5.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node).....	191
8.5.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node).....	191
8.5.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node).....	192
8.5.2.6 Start CCM Server transactions.....	192
8.6 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Solaris, Linux).....	192

8.6.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	192
8.6.1.1 Backup of the environment setting files.....	192
8.6.1.2 Available disk space verification.....	193
8.6.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux).....	193
8.6.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks.....	195
8.6.3.1 Restore of the environment setting files.....	195
8.6.3.2 Reconfiguration of device information.....	195
8.6.3.3 License registration.....	196
8.6.4 Resuming operations.....	197
Chapter 9 Troubleshooting.....	198
Chapter 10 Configuration import.....	200
10.1 Devices supported by the configuration import command.....	200
10.2 Command reference.....	201
10.2.1 esfimportdevconf (Configuration import command).....	202
10.2.2 esfimportdisplay (configuration import status display command).....	203
10.3 What to do when configuration import is not possible.....	204
10.4 What to do when an error occurs.....	205
Appendix A Operation for Previous Version Environment.....	206
A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows).....	206
A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux).....	208
A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows).....	210
A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux).....	212
A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX).....	214
A.6 Backup of the environment setting files.....	216
A.7 Unsetup of database.....	218
A.8 Cancel of repository settings.....	219
A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows).....	221
A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux).....	221
A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows).....	222
A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux).....	225
A.13 Restore of management information (for HP-UX, AIX).....	227
A.14 Restore of the environment setting files.....	229
A.15 Backup of common control repository (for Windows).....	231
A.16 Backup of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux).....	232
A.17 Backup of license management database (for Windows).....	233
A.18 Backup of license management database (for Solaris, Linux).....	233
A.19 Restore of common control repository (for Windows).....	233
A.20 Restore of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux).....	234
A.21 Restore of license management database (for Windows).....	235
A.22 Restore of license management database (for Solaris, Linux).....	236
Appendix B Install parameter.....	237
B.1 Install parameter file (for ETERNUS SF Manager).....	237
B.2 Install parameters (for ETERNUS SF Manager).....	238
B.3 Install parameter file (for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module).....	240

Chapter 1 Overview

This chapter is an overview of the upgrade process from a previous version to this version for Express, Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager.

1.1 Upgrade patterns

This section explains the system configuration before upgrade and after upgrade.

Point

This version level product combinations obey to the following rules:

- Express cannot be combined with Storage Cruiser or AdvancedCopy Manager in a same system environment.
- Storage Cruiser can be combined with AdvancedCopy Manager in a same system environment.

With ETERNUS SF Version 15, the manager functions for the three products (Express, Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager) are integrated in the same component. Moreover, the GUI for the three products is unified.

Refer to the followings according to the combination of the installed products.

Combination of products				Reference
Express	Storage Cruiser	AdvancedCopy Manager	AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	
Y	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from Express Version 14.x Chapter 3 Upgrade for Express Version 14.x
Y	-	Y	-	
Y	-	-	Y	
Y	-	Y	Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from Express Version 15.0B Chapter 4 Upgrade for Express Version 15.x
-	Y	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from Storage Cruiser Version 13.x/14.x Chapter 5 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x/14.x
-	Y	Y	-	
-	Y	-	Y	
-	Y	Y	Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from Storage Cruiser Version 15.0B Chapter 6 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x
-	-	Y	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x Chapter 7 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x
-	-	Y	Y	
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.0B Chapter 8 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x

Combination of products				Reference
Express	Storage Cruiser	AdvancedCopy Manager	AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	
-	-	-	Y	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When upgrading from AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x 7.3 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module - When upgrading from AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.0B <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 8.5 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Windows) - 8.6 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Solaris, Linux)

Y: Product installed
-: Product not installed

1.2 What is the Upgrade Installation

This version allows installation without uninstalling the previous version first. It is described as "**Upgrade Installation**" in this manual.

Information

For the uninstallation of the previous version:

You may be asked if you uninstall the previous version while upgrading. If the user chooses to uninstall the previous version, the uninstallation process is done automatically.

1.3 Products which can be upgraded with the Upgrade Installation

The products which can be upgraded with the Upgrade Installation procedure are as follows.

For Windows environment

Products which can use Upgrade Installation	Product after the upgrade
ETERNUS SF Express Version 14.x ETERNUS SF Express Version 15.0B (Note 1)	ETERNUS SF Express Version 15.1
ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 13.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 14.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.0B (Note 3)	ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.1
ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x (Note 4) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 14.x (Note 4) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.0B (Note 5)	ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.1

Note 1: For Windows Server 2008 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure can be used. For Windows Server 2003 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure cannot be used.

Note 2: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for the Storage Cruiser's manager only.

Note 3: For Windows Server 2008 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for Storage Cruiser's manager and Storage Cruiser's agent. For Windows Server 2003 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure cannot be used for Storage Cruiser's manager and Storage Cruiser's agent.

Note 4: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

Note 5: For Windows Server 2008 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager, AdvancedCopy Manager's agent, and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module. For Windows Server 2003 environment, the Upgrade Installation procedure cannot be used for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager, AdvancedCopy Manager's agent and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

For Solaris environment

Products which can use Upgrade Installation	Product after the upgrade
ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 13.x (Note 1) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 14.x (Note 1) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.0B (Note 1)	ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.1
ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 14.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.0B (Note 2)	ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.1

Note 1: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for the Storage Cruiser's manager only.

Note 2: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

For Linux environment

Products which can use Upgrade Installation	Product after the upgrade
ETERNUS SF Express Version 15.0B	ETERNUS SF Express Version 15.1
ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 13.x (Note 1) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 14.x (Note 1) ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.0B (Note 1)	ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Version 15.1
ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 14.x (Note 2) ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.0B (Note 2)	ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.1

Note 1: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for the Storage Cruiser's manager only.

Note 2: The Upgrade Installation procedure can be used for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

Note

For upgrading from the previous version products that are not listed in the table above and that installed in HP-UX and AIX environment:

It is not possible to use the Upgrade Installation procedure provided in this manual.

Please uninstall the previous version product and install this version product. Afterwards, perform as new all necessary setup and customization operations for this version.

1.4 Notes on upgrade

The following important points must be acknowledged before starting the upgrade process.

1.4.1 Common notes for all products

Operating systems

The operating system version level on the server where the upgrade will be performed must be supported by the version of the product that will be installed.



.....
For information regarding the operating system versions supported by the product, refer to "Operating Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".
.....

1.4.2 Notes for Express

Configuration information for Version 14.x

The following configuration information of Express Version 14.x cannot be carried over to this version level.

- Various Express configuration and history information
 - Events
 - Login/Logout History
 - Configuration Change History
 - User account of Express Web GUI



.....
For details on the configuration information, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Express User's Guide" for the previous version.
.....

Advanced Copy sessions existing in ETERNUS Disk storage system

It is possible to perform an Upgrade Installation during existing Advanced Copy and Remote Advanced Copy sessions.

The upgrade process is similar and has no influence on the existing Advanced Copy sessions.

1.4.3 Notes for Storage Cruiser

Upgrade from Softek Storage Cruiser Version 1.2.2

If you would like to upgrade from Softek Storage Cruiser Version 1.2.2 to this version, contact a Fujitsu system engineer.

Configuration information for Version 13.x and 14.x

The following configuration information of Storage Cruiser Version 13.x and 14.x cannot be carried over to this version level.

- User account for using GUI client

When setting up the information listed above to this version level, the following work is required.

1. It is necessary to confirm and record the information configured for the previous version level before performing the Upgrade Installation.

You can confirm the user account for the previous version level in the "Login account registration" window that is displayed by selecting [Tool]-[Authentication] in the GUI client resource management screen.

2. After performing Upgrade Installation, configure the information recorded in Step 1, manually.



.....
For setting up of a user account for this version level, refer to "Setting up user account" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".
.....

1.4.4 Notes for AdvancedCopy Manager

Advanced Copy sessions existing in ETERNUS Disk storage system

It is possible to perform an Upgrade Installation with existing Advanced Copy and Remote Advanced Copy sessions. Regardless of whether there are Advanced Copy sessions or not, the version upgrade procedure is the same.

Configuration information for Version 13.x and 14.x

The following configuration information of AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x and 14.x cannot be carried over to this version level.

- The user account for using GUI client

When setting up the information listed above to this version level, the following work is required.

1. It is necessary to confirm and record the information configured for the previous version level before performing the Upgrade Installation.

You can confirm the user account for the previous version level on the screen on which is displayed by the following procedure:

- In the case of AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.2 or earlier:

Select [View] from the [Security] menu on the initial window of AdvancedCopy Manager by the root user in Solaris and Linux environments, or by the startup account specified at the time of the installation of the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager in Windows environments.

- In the case of AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.3 - Version 14.2A:

Select [User Accounts] from the [File] menu of the main menu bar by the root user in Solaris and Linux environments, or by the startup account specified at the time of the installation of the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager in Windows environments.

2. After performing Upgrade Installation, configure the information recorded in Step 1, manually.



.....
For setting up of a user account for this version level, refer to "Setting up user account" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".
.....

Chapter 2 Changes from Previous Version

This chapter describes the contents changed from the previous version of products.

2.1 Changes for Express

This section describes the changes from the previous version of Express.

2.1.1 Changes for Version 15.1

Changes for counting method in Extended Copy sessions and for default filter on session list screen

On the AdvancedCopy Overview screen (Note1), the counting method for the number of copy sessions in the "Session" and "Local Copy Session Count" columns is changed.

Also, on the session list screen (Note2), the filter item for Copy Type that is selected by default when opening the screen is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- "Extended Copy Sessions" is included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count".- On the session list screen, "All" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.
15.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- "Extended Copy Sessions" is not included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count".- On the session list screen, "All Local or REC" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Category pane, click [Copy Sessions].

Changed setting method for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note), the method for specifying the custom Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a pull-down list.
15.1	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a spin button or direct input.

Note: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.

3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].
5. On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Changed minimum setting value for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note1), the minimum value to be set in the custom Copy Table Size is changed. Likewise, in the Remote Copy Configuration wizard (Note2), the minimum value to be set in the Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The minimum value that can be set is 0.
15.1	The minimum value that can be set is 8.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].
5. On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [REC Path] or [REC Buffer].
5. On the Action pane, click [Remote Copy Conf.] under the [Wizard].

2.1.2 Changes for Version 15.0

Changes for supported operating systems

The following operating systems are no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition SP2



See

.....

For the operating systems supported by this version of Express, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

.....

Changes for supported functions

The function to send troubleshooting information by e-mail is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to send the troubleshooting information to the address specified by e-mail.
15.0	The function is no longer supported.

The `express_diag` command is no longer supported

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to use <code>express_diag</code> command (Diagnosis of Express's manager environment).
15.0	The <code>express_diag</code> command is no longer supported. If a problem occurs with the Express's manager, collect the required troubleshooting information, and then contact a Fujitsu system engineer.

The export/import function of the copy group definition is no longer supported

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to use the export/import copy group definition function, and move the local site's copy group definition to the remote site. When performing a forced cancel or forced suspend operation to the remote copy session at the remote site, it is necessary to first export the copy group definition at the local site.
15.0	The export/import copy group definition function is no longer supported. Instead, perform a forced cancel or forced suspend of the remote copy session without moving the copy group definition to the remote site.



See

.....

For details about forced cancel or forced suspend of remote copy sessions on the Version 15.0, refer to the following manuals.

- "Forcible cancel the copy session" and "Forcible suspend the copy session" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".
 - "Forcibly stopping copy sessions" and "Forcibly Suspending REC Sessions" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module".
-

The automatic creation function of RAID group is no longer supported

The automatic creation function of RAID group for some models is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to be selected required disks automatically and created RAID groups with the automatic creation function of RAID group.
15.0	The automatic creation function of RAID group is not supported for the following models. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ETERNUS DX60/DX80/DX90 - ETERNUS DX60 S2

The function to set different names from names on the devices is no longer supported

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to set different names (alias names) from names on the devices for servers, storage devices or volumes.
15.0	It is no longer supported to set different names (alias names) from names on the devices for servers, storage devices or volumes.

Change for the connection address to the ETERNUS SF Web Console

The address to connect to the Management Server is changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	https://<IP-address>:<port_number>/express/
15.0	https://<IP-address>:<port_number>/



See

For details, refer to "How to start Web Console" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

Changes to the license process

The license management process is changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The Advanced Copy license is selected in install options. - For product upgrades to Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager, it is necessary to uninstall/install each product.
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The Advanced Copy license is set from the Web Console and command. - Product upgrades to Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager are possible only through software license registration of the relevant products.



See

For details, refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

Changes to the messages and event logs

The messages and event logs are changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Output the Express unique messages and event logs.
15.0	Output the messages and event logs the same as Storage Cruiser.

Changes to the path name of storageadm perfdata command (Windows)

The path name of the storageadm perfdata command is changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	\$INS_DIR\Express\Manager\bin (Note1)
15.0	\$INS_DIR\ESC\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\sbin (Note2)

Note1: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the Express installation.

Note2: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

Changes to the install directory and name of troubleshooting information collection command (Windows)

The troubleshooting information collection command name and path are changed as follows.

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
14.2 or earlier	express_managersnap	\$INS_DIR\Express\Manager\bin (Note1)
15.0	esfsnap	\$INS_DIR\Common\bin (Note2)

Note1: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the Express installation.

Note2: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

2.2 Changes for Storage Cruiser

This section describes the changes from the previous version of Storage Cruiser.

2.2.1 Changes for Version 15.1

Connectivity management display is no longer supported

The connectivity management display has been discontinued.

In Version 15.1, mount points and MultiPath driver devices are displayed in the End to End view.

For details, refer to "[Changes for displayed contents of End to End view](#)".

Changes for displayed contents of End to End view

In the displayed contents of the End to End view, the mount points and MultiPath driver devices fetched from Storage Cruiser's agent are added. The same applies for CSV output.

Version	Details
15.0 or earlier	<p>The following items are displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Server <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Type - Interface Type - HBA WWPN - HBA iSCSI Name / IP Address - Switch (Connected to Server) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port - Switch (Connected to Storage) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port - Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port - AG - LUN - Volume - TPP - RG - RG (Concatenated)
15.1	<p>The following items are displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Server <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Type - Mount Point - Multipath Driver Device - Interface Type - HBA WWPN - HBA iSCSI Name / IP Address - Switch (Connected to Server) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port - Switch (Connected to Storage) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port

Version	Details
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Name - Port - AG - LUN - Volume - TPP - RG - RG (Concatenated)

Note

The items [Mount Point] and [Multipath Driver Device] display a hyphen ("-") when:

- The OS of the Managed Server is Windows, and the version of Storage Cruiser's agent is Version 15.0.

Change the map view function

The map view function has been changed as follows:

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	A map (icon) display and a list display are available. The map display can display connecting lines between icons, statuses of access paths, and physical lines that are forming access paths, and allows for drag-and-drop setting of access paths.
15.0	Only a list display, but no map display is available. Settings for the map display (display of connecting lines between icons, statuses of access paths, and physical lines that are forming access paths, as well as drag-and-drop setting of access paths) are not available.
15.1	A map display and a list display are available. The map display allows for display of connecting lines between icons, statuses of access paths, and physical lines that are forming access paths. Drag-and-drop setting of access paths is not available.

Changes for counting method in Extended Copy sessions and for default filter on session list screen

On the AdvancedCopy Overview screen (Note1), the counting method for the number of copy sessions in the "Session" and "Local Copy Session Count" columns is changed.

Also, on the session list screen (Note2), the filter item for Copy Type that is selected by default when opening the screen is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Extended Copy Sessions" is included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count". - On the session list screen, "All" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.
15.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Extended Copy Sessions" is not included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count". - On the session list screen, "All Local or REC" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Category pane, click [Copy Sessions].

Changed setting method for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note), the method for specifying the custom Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a pull-down list.
15.1	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a spin button or direct input.

Note: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].
5. On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Changed minimum setting value for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note1), the minimum value to be set in the custom Copy Table Size is changed.

Likewise, in the Remote Copy Configuration wizard (Note2), the minimum value to be set in the Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The minimum value that can be set is 0.
15.1	The minimum value that can be set is 8.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].
5. On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].

4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [REC Path] or [REC Buffer].
5. On the Action pane, click [Remote Copy Conf.] under the [Wizard].

Changes for output information of port commands (storageadm port)

The output information of port and device commands (storageadm port) has been changed as follows.

DEVICE NAME	Number of CMs per Device	Number of Ports per CM
ETERNUS2000	1	2
ETERNUS DX60	1	2
	2	1
ETERNUS DX60 S2	1	2
	2	1
ETERNUS DX80	1	2
	2	1
ETERNUS DX90	1	4

The output information has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
15.0 or earlier	<p>Absent port information is displayed.</p> <p>[Command Execution Example]</p> <pre># /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/storageadm port info -ipaddr 1.2.3.4 -csv PORT ID,PORT NAME,STATUS,TYPE,AFFINITY,PORT ADDRESS,SUPPLEMENT INFORMATION 00,CM0Port0,Online,FC-CA,On,1234567890ABCDEE,- 01,CM0Port1,Undefined,FC-CA,Off,0000000000000000,- 10,CM1Port0,Online,FC-CA,On,1234567890ABCDEE,- 11,CM1Port1,Undefined,FC-CA,Off,0000000000000000,-</pre>
15.1	<p>Absent port information is not displayed.</p> <p>[Command Execution Example]</p> <pre># /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/storageadm port info -ipaddr 1.2.3.4 -csv PORT ID,PORT NAME,STATUS,TYPE,AFFINITY,PORT ADDRESS,SUPPLEMENT INFORMATION 00,CM0Port0,Online,FC-CA,On,1234567890ABCDEE,- 10,CM1Port0,Online,FC-CA,On,1234567890ABCDEE,-</pre>

Changes for output information of iSCSI port commands (storageadm iscsiport)

The output information of iSCSI port and device commands (storageadm iscsiport) has been changed as follows.

DEVICE NAME	Number of CMs per Device	Number of Ports per CM
ETERNUS2000	1	2
ETERNUS DX60	1	2
	2	1
ETERNUS DX60 S2	1	2
	2	1
ETERNUS DX80	1	2
	2	1

The output information has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
15.0 or earlier	<p>Absent iSCSI port information is displayed.</p> <p>[Command Execution Example]</p> <pre># /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/storageadm iscsiport info -ipaddr 1.2.3.4 -csv PORT ID,NAME,STATUS,TYPE,AFFINITY,ISCSI NAME,IP ADDRESS 00,CM0Port0,Online,iSCSI-CA,On,iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage- system.e2000:0000000029,172.16.4.40 01,CM0Port1,Undefined,iSCSI-CA,Off, ,- 10,CM1Port0,Online,iSCSI-CA,On,iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage- system.e2000:0000000029,172.16.4.41 11,CM1Port1,Undefined,iSCSI-CA,Off, ,-</pre>
15.1	<p>Absent iSCSI port information is not displayed.</p> <p>[Command Execution Example]</p> <pre># /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/storageadm iscsiport info -ipaddr 1.2.3.4 -csv PORT ID,NAME,STATUS,TYPE,AFFINITY,ISCSI NAME,IP ADDRESS 00,CM0Port0,Online,iSCSI-CA,On,iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage- system.e2000:0000000029,172.16.4.40 10,CM1Port0,Online,iSCSI-CA,On,iqn.2000-09.com.fujitsu:storage- system.e2000:0000000029,172.16.4.41</pre>

2.2.2 Changes for Version 15.0

Changes to the GUI

The GUI client has been replaced with the Web Console.

Uninstall the installed GUI client.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	When operating the Storage Cruiser function with a GUI, the operation is performed from the Storage Cruiser GUI client installed on the PC.
15.0	When operating the Storage Cruiser function with a GUI, the operation is performed from a web browser.



See

For details on the usable web browser and how to use the Web Console, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

Changes for supported devices

The following devices are no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	<p>ETERNUS4000 models 80 and 100</p> <p>ETERNUS3000 (all models)</p> <p>ETERNUS6000 (all models)</p> <p>ETERNUS GR series</p>

Version	Details
	ETERNUS SX300, SX300S ETERNUS VS900 ETERNUS LT120/LT130/LT160 FibreCAT SX series EMC Symmetrix DMX, Clarix HITACHI HDS (HITACHI DATA SYSTEM) Disk array



See

For the devices that can be managed by this version of Storage Cruiser, refer to "Supported devices" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

Changes for supported operating systems

The following operating systems are no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Storage Cruiser's manager <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Foundation (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 R2 Foundation SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition SP2 - Storage Cruiser's agent <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Solaris(TM) 8 Operating System Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 5 (for Intel Itanium) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) AS (v.4 for Itanium) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) AS (v.3 for x86) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) ES (v.3 for x86) SUSE(R) Linux Enterprise Server 9 EM64T



See

For the operating systems supported by this version of Storage Cruiser, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" and "Operating environment of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

Changes for supported functions

Storage Volume Configuration Navigator is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to use the Storage Volume Configuration Navigator.
15.0	Storage Volume Configuration Navigator is no longer supported.

The map view function is no longer supported

Displaying map is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Display is possible in both Map (icon) and List formats. In the Map format display, each icon connectivity and access path status is displayed, and physical access paths can be set by drag and drop.
15.0	Display is possible in List format only. Map format display is not available. Icon connectivity, access path status display as well as access path connectivity setup by drag and drop is not possible.



Information

- Use the List display for device status information.
- The access path setup with drag and drop is replaced by selection in the list.

Memo information table is no longer supported

The memo information table has been discontinued.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Display and edition of memo information is possible,
15.0	Display and edition of memo information is not possible. The memo information created with former versions cannot be restored in the new version.

The Correlation window is no longer supported

The Correlation window below is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to display the detailed relational management configuration within the device as a separate window element.
15.0	List view is possible but not as a separate window element.

Connectivity management display is no longer supported

The connectivity management display has been discontinued.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	The following items relative to connectivity management cannot be displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Business components (application) display- DBMS display- File system (mount point) display- Mirror drive display- Multipath drive display- Raw Device display- IOB display- Router display- DE display- Battery display- Element integrated display- Connection display- Configuration information saving

Revolving light icon is no longer supported

The revolving light icon is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The revolving light icon is displayed on the Resource view.
15.0	The revolving light icon is not displayed.

Displaying condition report is no longer supported

The processing for threshold monitoring of performance management function has changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The condition report is displayed.
15.0	The condition report is not displayed.

SNMP Trap setup after a Fibre Channel Switch has been registered is no longer supported

Support for SNMP Trap setup after a Fibre Channel Switch has been registered has changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	SNMP trap setup can be enable after a Fibre Channel Switch has been registered.
15.0	If SNMP Trap settings are changed after a Fibre Channel Switch has been registered, the device must be re-registered.

Beacon function for Solaris server node is no longer supported

The beacon function for Solaris server node has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The beacon function is available.
15.0	The beacon function is not available.

File output function for performance management graph is no longer supported

The file output function in the display of performance management graph has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The content displaying in the performance management graph is available to output as a JPEG file.
15.0	The content displaying in the performance management graph is not available to output as a JPEG file.

Changes to the default install path for programs that include manager functions

This change is for Windows environment only.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	C:\Program Files\ETERNUS-SSC\Manager
15.0	C:\ETERNUS_SF\ESC\Manager



Example

When having installed a program to the default installation location, the full path for the shell script used with a shell linkage function is as follows:

- In the case of Version 14.2 or earlier:

C:\Program Files\ETERNUS-SSC\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\lib\sample\trapop.bat

- In the case of Version 15.0:

C:\ETERNUS_SF\ESC\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\lib\sample\trapop.bat

Changes for the device registration for ETERNUS Disk storage system

The information necessary for device registration of ETERNUS Disk storage system is as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is not necessary to specify an account of ETERNUS Disk storage system.
15.0	For the following models, it is necessary to specify an account holding ETERNUS Disk storage system Software Role privileges. <ul style="list-style-type: none">- ETERNUS DX80 S2/DX90 S2- ETERNUS DX400 S2 series

Version	Details
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ETERNUS DX8000 S2 series <p>For models besides those listed above, it is necessary to specify an account holding ETERNUS Disk storage system Administrator privileges.</p>

Change default value of registered a device

The setup function checking of SNMP trap for registering ETERNUS Disk storage system and Fibre Channel Switch has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	When registering ETERNUS Disk storage system and Fibre Channel Switch, the automatic setting function for SNMP trap destination address is checked by default.
15.0	When registering ETERNUS Disk storage system and Fibre Channel Switch, the automatic setting function for SNMP trap destination address is not checked by default.



Changes for the login account

The login account has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	In order to connect to the Management Server from the Storage Cruiser client, a dedicated Storage Cruiser account is necessary.
15.0	In order to connect to the Management Server from the Web Console, a dedicated Storage Cruiser account is not necessary. The Management Server's OS account is used.

Change the icon displaying threshold monitoring of Thin Provisioning Pool

The icon displayed when the usage of Thin Provisioning Pool exceed "alarm threshold" has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Displays " 
15.0	Displays " 

Change the display method for Capacity Chart of Thin Provisioning Pool

The display method for Capacity Chart of Thin Provisioning Pool has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The following items that can be selected as the content to be displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Used capacity - Remain capacity - The following items that can be selected as the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - TB - % - The following items that can be selected as the Time Axis.

Version	Details
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Past 1 month - Past N year (N : 1 - 10) - Two or more graph windows of Thin Provisioning Pool can be displayed with one direction.
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The content to be displayed is only "Used Capacity". - The unit is only TB. - The following items that can be selected as the Duration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 1 Month - 1 Year - 10 Years - One graph window of Thin Provisioning Pool can be displayed with one direction.

Changes to the process of deleting the Management Server

The process for deleting a Management Server with a set access path has changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	In the case of the access path being set when deleting the Management Server, the access path is deleted at the same time.
15.0	In the case of the access path being set when deleting the Management Server, it is not possible to delete the access path at the same time.

Changes to the process of deleting a VM Host if VM Guests exist under the VM Host

The process for deleting a VM Host if VM Guests exist under this VM Host has changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	When a VM Host is deleted, all the VM Guests under that VM Host are deleted as well from ETERNUS SF.
15.0	If a VM Host with existing VM Guests is deleted, all the VM Guests must be first deleted from ETERNUS SF. The VM Guests cannot be deleted as the same time as the VM Host.

Changes to the install directory and name of troubleshooting information collection command (Storage Cruiser's manager)

The troubleshooting information collection command name and path are changed as follows.

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
14.2 or earlier	managersnap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment (Note1): \$INS_DIR\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\sbin - For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin
15.0	esfsnap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment (Note2): \$INS_DIR\Common\bin

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
		- For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin

Note1: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser installation.

Note2: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

2.2.3 Changes for Version 14.2 or earlier

Change to the error message output by storage management commands

The message output by storage management commands is changed as follows.

Message ID	V14.1 or earlier	V14.2
ssmgr3228	The specified RAID group number is used in the Thin Provisioning Pool.	The specified RAID group cannot operate.

Changes for the SNMP trap reception program

- For Windows environment:

Version	Detail
14.1 or earlier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - SystemWalker MpWksttr is used as the SNMP trap monitoring service. - If in use with the ServerView AlarmService, the mpmts ON command must be executed. - If in use with Systemwalker Centric Manager, no special settings are required.
14.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The OS standard SNMP trap monitoring service is used. Windows Server 2003: SNMP Trap Service Windows Server 2008: SNMP Trap - If in use with the ServerView AlarmService, the mpmts ON command need not be executed. - If in use with Systemwalker Centric Manager, the settings indicating coexistence with the ServerView AlarmService are required at the Systemwalker Centric Manager side.

- For Linux environment:

Version	Detail
14.1 or earlier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - FJSVswstt is used as the SNMP trap monitoring daemon. - No special settings are required to use FJSVswstt. - If in use with the ServerView AlarmService, the ServerView trap transfer program is required. - If in use with any of the Systemwalker Centric Manager versions or with ServerView Resource Coordinator VE V2.1.1 to V2.1.3, no special settings are required.
14.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The snmptrapd in the OS standard net-snmp package is used as the SNMP trap monitoring daemon. - The snmptrapd settings must be changed in order to use snmptrapd. - If in use with the ServerView AlarmService, the ServerView trap distributor program (SMAWtrpsv) is not required.

Version	Detail
	- If in use with any of the Systemwalker Centric Manager versions or with ServerView Resource Coordinator VE V2.1.1 to V2.1.3, the settings indicating use with the ServerView AlarmService are required at the Systemwalker Centric Manager or ServerView Resource Coordinator VE side.

Changes for communication recovery event messages

In the device polling function, incompatible target devices are the Managed devices using the "Communication status check" polling method.

Version	Details
13.4 or earlier	Unit status changed: OK Unit status changed: Warning Unit status changed: Error
14.0	Connection OK



See

For details on the polling methods, refer to "Device Polling" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

Change the management method for VMware Infrastructure 3 Version 3.5

Version	Details
13.3 or earlier	Manages VMware infrastructure by installing a Storage Cruiser's agent on the host operating system. To register VMware Infrastructure with this software, the IP address of host operating system is required. On the Correlation Windows, ext2 and ext3 filesystem are displayed.
13.4	Manages VMware infrastructure without installing a Storage Cruiser's agent on the host operating system. To register VMware Infrastructure with this software, the IP address of VM host, user name and password to login to VM host are required. On the Correlation Windows, ext2 and ext3 filesystem are not displayed.

If the agents from Version 13.3 or earlier are still used even after migrating the Manager to Version 13.4, then the management method does not change. To manage the VMware infrastructure using the new management method, first migrate the Manager to Version 13.4, then delete the settings for the servers where the agent has been installed from this software and register the servers again using the new management method.



See

For details about the new management method and registration procedure, refer to the "VMware Infrastructure 3 Version 3.5 (or later), VMware vSphere 4 (or later) or VMware ESXi 3.5 (or later)" and "Registering device" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

Changes for the integration icon name and basic information for LVM logical/physical volume

This change is for HP-UX environment only.

Item	Version	Details
Integration icon name for logical volume	13.3 or earlier	PVLink Logical Volumes(xxxx)

Item	Version	Details
	13.4	LVM Logical Volumes(xxxx)
Basic information of integration icon for logical volume	13.3 or earlier	PVLink Logical Volumes(xxxx)
	13.4	LVM Logical Volumes(xxxx)
Basic information of integration icon for physical volume	13.3 or earlier	PVLink Physical Volumes(xxxx)
	13.4	LVM Physical Volumes(xxxx)

Basic information of integration icon is displayed by selecting **Basic information** tab in property window for the integration icon.

Example

- In the case of Version 13.3 or earlier:

Integration icon name for logical volume: PVLink Logical Volumes(vg01)

Integration icon for logical volume - **Basic information** tab: PVLink Logical Volumes(vg01)

Integration icon for physical volume - **Basic information** tab: PVLink Physical Volumes(c2t0d0-7)

- In the case of Version 13.4 or later:

Integration icon name for logical volume: LVM Logical Volumes(vg01)

Integration icon for logical volume - **Basic information** tab: LVM Logical Volumes(vg01)

Integration icon for physical volume - **Basic information** tab: LVM Physical Volumes(c2t0d0-7)

Changes for the Argument-1 value to be handed over to the event linked functionality

Version	Details
13.1 or earlier	"SilkWorm xxxx".
13.2	"xxxx."

Example

- In the case of Version 13.1 or earlier:

"AP:SSC: INFO: swsag4203:FC Port No.0 Online in M540(SilkWorm 48000[192.168.0.1])"

- In the case of Version 13.2 or later:

"AP:SSC: INFO: swsag4203:FC Port No.0 Online in M540(48000[192.168.0.1])"

Changes for the install directory and name of command using the Management Server (for Solaris)

This change is for Solaris environment only.

Command	Version	Details
Start and stop daemon command	13.1 or earlier	/opt/FJSVrcxmr/sbin/rcxmgrctl
	13.2	/opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/managerctl
Investigation data collection command	13.1 or earlier	/opt/FJSVrcxmr/sbin/rcxmgrsnap
	13.2	/opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/managersnap

Changes for the command line resource path for cluster environment (for Solaris)

This change is for Solaris environment only.

Type of script	Version	Details
Start script	13.1 or earlier	/opt/FJSVrcxmr/cluster/cmd/rcxclstartcmd
	13.2	/opt/FJSVssmgr/cluster/cmd/rcxclstartcmd
Stop script	13.1 or earlier	/opt/FJSVrcxmr/cluster/cmd/rcxclstopcmd
	13.2	/opt/FJSVssmgr/cluster/cmd/rcxclstopcmd
Check script	13.1 or earlier	/opt/FJSVrcxmr/cluster/cmd/rcxclcheckcmd
	13.2	/opt/FJSVssmgr/cluster/cmd/rcxclcheckcmd

Changes for the message in relation to the SN200 MDS (Cisco MDS) events

Version	Details
13.0 or earlier	The status of the port has changed to %STATE%/%STATUS%
13.1	The status of the port has changed to %STATE%/%STATUS% fc%SLOT NUMBER%/%PORT NUMBER IN THE SLOT%(%PORT NUMBER%)



See

For the details of the new message formats, refer to "SN200 MDS (Cisco MDS) Events" in the "ETERNUS SF Event Guide".

2.3 Changes for AdvancedCopy Manager

This section describes the changes from the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager.

2.3.1 Changes for Version 15.1

Changed operation of swsrpmake (Replication create command)

Operation of swsrpmake (Replication creation command) is changed if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- A volume used by cascade copy has been specified as a copy source, and, at the same time,
- the -XConcur-opc option has been specified, and, at the same time,
- the file for setting preservation of the sequence of data updates by Concurrent OPC does not include the parameter "ConcurOPCCascade", or
the file for setting preservation of the sequence of data updates by Concurrent OPC was not created.

Version	Details
15.0	The sequence of data updates will not be preserved across multiple volumes.
15.1	The sequence of data updates will be preserved across multiple volumes.



See

For details, refer to "Notes on combining cascade copy and Concurrent OPC in operation" under "Notes on snapshot high-speed backup" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide".

Changed operation of `acopc start` (OPC/QuickOPC copy start command) and `acsnap start` (SnapOPC+ copy start command)

Operation of the `acopc start` and `acsnap start` commands is changed if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- A volume used by cascade copy has been specified as a copy source, and, at the same time,
- the `-concur` option has been specified, and, at the same time,
- the file for setting preservation of the sequence of data updates by Concurrent OPC does not include the parameter "concurOPC.cascade", or the file for setting preservation of the sequence of data updates by Concurrent OPC was not created.

Version	Details
15.0	The sequence of data updates will not be preserved across multiple volumes.
15.1	The sequence of data updates will be preserved across multiple volumes.



See

For details, refer to "Notes on combining cascade copy and Concurrent OPC in operation" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module".

Changed methods for setting and deleting environments for cluster systems in the Solaris and HP-UX versions

The methods for setting and deleting environments for the following cluster systems are changed:

- Solaris version SynfinityCLUSTER/PRIMECLUSTER
- Solaris version VERITAS Cluster Server
- Solaris version Sun Cluster
- HP-UX version MC/ServiceGuard (A.11.17 or earlier)
- HP-UX version VERITAS Cluster Server

Version	Details
15.0 or earlier	<p>The following commands serve to set and delete environments for cluster systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <code>stgclset_safe</code> (Solaris version SynfinityCLUSTER/PRIMECLUSTER environment setup command) - <code>stgclset_vcs</code> (Solaris version VERITAS Cluster Server environment setup command) - <code>stgclset_sun</code> (Solaris version Sun Cluster environment setup command) - <code>stgclset_mcsmsg</code> (HP-UX version MC/ServiceGuard environment setup command) - <code>stgclset_hpvc</code> (HP-UX version VERITAS Cluster Server environment setup command) - <code>stgclunset_safe</code> (Solaris version SynfinityCLUSTER/PRIMECLUSTER environment cancel command) - <code>stgclunset_vcs</code> (Solaris version VERITAS Cluster Server environment cancel command) - <code>stgclunset_sun</code> (Solaris version Sun Cluster environment cancel command)

Version	Details
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - stgclunset_mcs (HP-UX version MC/ServiceGuard environment cancel command) - stgclunset_hpvcs (HP-UX version VERITAS Cluster Server environment cancel command)
15.1	<p>Above commands are not supported.</p> <p>Refer to "Applying Clusters for Solaris/Linux/HP-UX Version" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" to set and delete environments for cluster systems.</p>

Changes for counting method in Extended Copy sessions and for default filter on session list screen

On the AdvancedCopy Overview screen (Note1), the counting method for the number of copy sessions in the "Session" and "Local Copy Session Count" columns is changed.

Also, on the session list screen (Note2), the filter item for Copy Type that is selected by default when opening the screen is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Extended Copy Sessions" is included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count". - On the session list screen, "All" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.
15.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Extended Copy Sessions" is not included in "Sessions" and "Local Copy Session Count". - On the session list screen, "All Local or REC" is selected as the filter item for Copy Type by default when opening the screen.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Category pane, click [Copy Sessions].

Changed setting method for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note), the method for specifying the custom Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a pull-down list.
15.1	The custom Copy Table Size can be specified by a spin button or direct input.

Note: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

1. On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
2. On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
3. On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
4. On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].

- On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Changed minimum setting value for Copy Table Size

On the Advanced Copy Configuration Wizard screen (Note1), the minimum value to be set in the custom Copy Table Size is changed. Likewise, in the Remote Copy Configuration wizard (Note2), the minimum value to be set in the Copy Table Size is changed.

Version	Details
15.0	The minimum value that can be set is 0.
15.1	The minimum value that can be set is 8.

Note1: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

- On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
- On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
- On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
- On the Advanced Copy pane, click [Configuration].
- On the Action pane, click [Advanced Copy] under the [Wizard].

Note2: The screen that is opened by the following procedure:

- On the global navigation tab, click [Storage].
- On the Main pane, click the "name" of target ETERNUS Disk storage system.
- On the Category pane, click [Advanced Copy].
- On the Advanced Copy pane, click [REC Path] or [REC Buffer].
- On the Action pane, click [Remote Copy Conf.] under the [Wizard].

Changed customization procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM

The procedure of "Customization for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" is changed as follows.

Version	Details
15.0	In the file ".install.sys", modification of the value for "stxs_etcdir=" is required.
15.1	In the file ".install.sys", modification of the value for "stxs_etcdir=" is not required.

Changed information on copying progress rate of QuickOPC

The information on the copying progress rate of QuickOPC, which is displayed when executing below commands, is changed.

- AdvancedCopy Manager commands
 - OS common commands
 - "Execute" column of swstbackstat (Backup execution status display command).
 - "Execute" column of swsthistdisp (History information display command).
 - "Execute" column of swstexecstat (Execution status display command).
 - "Execute" column of swstrkstat (Tracking status display command).
 - "Execute" column of swsrpstat (Operation status display command).

- For Windows environment
 - "Execute" column of swsrpshadowadm_exchange (Exchange VSS shadow copy management command).
 - "Execute" column of swsrprvq advcopy query (Advanced Copy status display command).
- AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module's Command
 - "Progress" column of acopc query (OPC/QuickOPC copy status display command).

Version	Details
15.0	If you write data onto a copy source volume while physical copying of QuickOPC is in progress, the displayed progress rate will not reach 100% after completing physical copying.
15.1	In the following ETERNUS Disk storage systems, if you write data onto a copy source volume while physical copying of QuickOPC is in progress, a progress rate of 100% will be displayed after completing physical copying. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ETERNUS DX80 S2/DX90 S2 (Firmware version is V10L30 or later) - ETERNUS DX400 S2 series (Firmware version is V10L30 or later) - ETERNUS DX8000 S2 series (Firmware version is V10L30 or later)

Incompatibility with other products that include Symfaware Server V8.X or earlier (only for Windows Server 2003)

The AdvancedCopy Manager of ETERNUS SF Manager uses Symfaware Server as a repository.
In Windows Server 2003, use of Symfaware Server V8.X or earlier as a repository is no longer supported.

Version	Details
15.0 or earlier	AdvancedCopy Manager is compatible with version levels V6 to V8 or earlier of Symfaware Server as a repository. It is not compatible with V9 or later version levels of Symfaware Server.
15.1	AdvancedCopy Manager is not compatible with version levels V6 to V8 or earlier of Symfaware Server as a repository. It is compatible with V9 or later version levels of Symfaware Server.

2.3.2 Changes for Version 15.0

Changes to terminology used with AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module

The name of the logical volume used to access the ETERNUS Disk storage system has been changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Access Path
15.0	Access Volume

Changes to the GUI

The GUI client has been replaced with the Web Console.
Uninstall the installed GUI client.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	When operating the AdvancedCopy Manager function with a GUI, the operation is performed from the AdvancedCopy Manager GUI client installed on the PC.

Version	Details
15.0	When operating the AdvancedCopy Manager function with a GUI, the operation is performed from a web browser.



See

For details on supported web browsers and how to use the Web Console, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

Changes for Tape Backup function

The AdvancedCopy Manager Tape Server Option is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	It is possible to back up the data to tape using AdvancedCopy Manager Tape Server Option.
15.0	The function is no longer supported.

Changes for supported devices

The following devices are no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	ETERNUS4000 models 80 and 100 ETERNUS3000 (all models) ETERNUS6000 (all models) ETERNUS GR series



See

For the devices that can be managed by this version of AdvancedCopy Manager, refer to "Supported devices" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

Changes for supported operating systems

The following operating systems are no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	-
15.0	- AdvancedCopy Manager's manager Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) - AdvancedCopy Manager's agent Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP)

Version	Details
	Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Solaris(TM) 8 Operating System Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 5 (for Intel Itanium) Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) AS (v.4 for Itanium) - AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2008 for Itanium-Based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003, Enterprise Edition for Itanium-based Systems SP2 Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Standard x64 Edition (non-SP) Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2003 R2, Enterprise x64 Edition (non-SP)



See

For the operating systems supported by this version of AdvancedCopy Manager, refer to the following sections in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

- "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager"
- "Operating environment of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent"
- "Operating environment of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM"

Changes to the default install path for programs that include manager functions

This change is for Windows environment only.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	C:\Win32app\AdvancedCopyManager
15.0	C:\ETERNUS_SF\ACM



Example

When having installed a program to the default installation location, the full path of the stgcmmodnode command is as follows:

- In the case of Version 14.2 or earlier:
C:\Win32app\AdvancedCopyManager\bin\stgcmmodnode
- In the case of Version 15.0:
C:\ETERNUS_SF\ACM\bin\stgcmmodnode

Changes to command preview

Command preview is no longer supported.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The command preview allows checking the available task operations (command options) prior to execution.
15.0	There is no command preview.



Refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for details on the commands.

Changes to the processing when specifying the -t option in the stmgrinfobkup (Management information package backup command)

The following changes have been made when the AuthData is specified to the -t option argument.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	The command backs up the authentication management file.
15.0	The command terminates abnormally because of the syntax error.



After the change, when using the policy file settings and executing the stmgrinfobkup command, even if the key name [AuthData] is at "Yes", the Authentication management list will not be backed up.

Changes to the information displayed by the stgenvdisp (Environment information display command)

The information displayed in the case of the Management Server has changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Display "Authentication feature" and "IP address for GUI".
15.0	Not display "Authentication feature" and "IP address for GUI".

Changes to the processing of the swstbackup (Backup execution command)

For the Windows version of the swstbackup command, the processing under the following conditions has changed.

- The -Xflush option is not specified, and
- The BufferFlushOnly parameter is not described in the transaction volume locking specification file for backups, or when the transaction volume locking specification file for backups does not exist.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Lock the transaction volume.
15.0	Flush the file system buffer for the transaction volume.

Information

In the Windows version of the `swsbackup` command, the relation for the `-Xflush` option and the transaction volume locking specification file for backups are as follows.

Version	-Xflush option	If the BufferFlushOnly value is on	If the BufferFlushOnly value is off	If the BufferFlushOnly parameter is not described	If the transaction volume locking specification file for backups does not exist
14.2 or earlier	Not specify	Flush	Lock	Lock	Lock
	Specify	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush
15.0	Not specify	Flush	Lock	Flush	Flush
	Specify	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush

Lock: Lock the transaction volume.

Flush: Flush the file system buffer for the transaction volume.

Changes to the processing of the `swsrpmake` (Replication creation command) and `swsrpcancel` (Replication cancellation command)

For the Windows version of the `swsrpmake` command and `swsrpcancel` command, the processing under the following conditions has changed.

- The `-Xflush` option is not specified, and
- The `BufferFlushOnly` parameter is not described in the copy source volume locking specification file, or when the copy source volume locking specification file does not exist.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Lock the copy source volume.
15.0	Flush the file system buffer for the copy source volume.

Information

In the Windows version of the `swsrpmake` command and `swsrpcancel` command, the relation for the `-Xflush` option and the copy source volume locking specification file are as follows.

Version	-Xflush option	If the BufferFlushOnly value is on	If the BufferFlushOnly value is off	If the BufferFlushOnly parameter is not described	If the copy source volume locking specification file does not exist
14.2 or earlier	Not specify	Flush	Lock	Lock	Lock
	Specify	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush
15.0	Not specify	Flush	Lock	Flush	Flush
	Specify	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush

Lock: Lock the copy source volume.

Flush: Flush the file system buffer for the copy source volume.



When using the server-to-server replication and AdvancedCopy Manager installed in the Management Server (where the replication source volume exists) is Version 14.2 or earlier, the processing will revert to those of Version 14.2 or earlier.

Changes the methods for environment setup/cancel to the Linux version PRIMECLUSTER

The methods for environment setup/cancel to the Linux version PRIMECLUSTER have changed as follows.

Version	Details
14.2 or earlier	Environment setup and cancel are performed with the following commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - stgclset_lxprm (Linux version PRIMECLUSTER environment setup command) - stgclunset_lxprm (Linux version PRIMECLUSTER environment cancel command)
15.0	The above two commands are not supported. Instead, environment setup and cancel are performed by the Linux/HP-UX version cluster setup and un-setup procedures.

Changes to the install directory and name of troubleshooting information collection command (AdvancedCopy Manager)

The troubleshooting information collection command name and path are changed as follows.

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
14.2 or earlier	acmcapture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment: <i><AdvancedCopy Manager Program Directory>\bin</i> - For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVswstf/bin
15.0	esfsnap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment (Note): \$INS_DIR\Common\bin - For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin

Note: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

Changes to the install directory and name of troubleshooting information collection command (AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module)

The troubleshooting information collection command name and path are changed as follows.

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
14.2 or earlier	acmcapture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment: <i><AdvancedCopy Manager Program Directory>\bin</i> - For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVswstf/bin
15.0	esfsnap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - For Windows environment (Note): \$INS_DIR\Common\bin

Version	Details	
	Command name	Path name
		- For Solaris, Linux environment: /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin

Note: \$INS_DIR means "Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

2.3.3 Changes for Version 14.2 or earlier

Changes the messages output by AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module

The messages output by AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are changed as follows.

Message ID	V14.1 or earlier	V14.2
ccm1001	Input parameter is illegal.	An invalid argument was specified.
ccm1002	An invalid option is specified. option=[<i>OPTION</i>]	An invalid option was specified. option=[<i>OPTION</i>]
ccm1003	An invalid parameter is specified. option=[<i>OPTION</i>], parameter=[<i>PARAMETER</i>]	An invalid parameter was specified. option=[<i>OPTION</i>], parameter=[<i>PARAMETER</i>]
ccm1004	An invalid option is specified. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], copy type=[<i>COPYTYPE</i>], option=[<i>OPTION</i>]	An invalid option was specified for the copy type. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], copy type=[<i>COPYTYPE</i>], option=[<i>OPTION</i>]
ccm2001	This program requires administrative privileges of the operation system.	This command requires operating system's administrative privileges.
ccm3001	The disk array already exists. disk array=[<i>DISKARRAY</i>]	The specified disk array is already registered. disk array=[<i>DISKARRAY</i>]
ccm3002	The copy group already exists. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]	The specified copy group is already registered. Copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]
ccm3003	The pair already exists. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], pair=[<i>PAIR</i>]	The specified copy pair is already registered. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], pair=[<i>PAIR</i>]
ccm3004	An invalid pair is specified. pair=[<i>PAIR</i>], detail=[<i>DETAIL</i>]	An invalid copy pair was specified. pair=[<i>PAIR</i>], detail=[<i>DETAIL</i>]
ccm4001	The disk array does not exist. disk array=[<i>DISKARRAY</i>]	The specified disk array does not exist. disk array=[<i>DISKARRAY</i>]
ccm4002	The disk array does not exist. disk array=[<i>BOX-ID</i>]	The specified disk array does not exist. disk array=[<i>BOX-ID</i>]
ccm4003	The copy group is not found. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]	The specified copy group was not found. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]
ccm4004	The pair is not found. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]	No copy pair was found for the specified copy group. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>]
ccm4005	The pair is not found. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], pair=[<i>PAIR</i>]	The specified copy pair was not found. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], pair=[<i>PAIR</i>]
ccm4006	The logical volume is not found. logical volume=[<i>LOGICAL-VOLUME</i>]	The specified logical volume was not found. logical volume=[<i>LOGICAL-VOLUME</i>]
ccm4007	An invalid copy group is specified. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], copy type=[<i>COPYTYPE</i>]	An invalid copy group was specified. copy group=[<i>COPYGROUP</i>], copy type=[<i>COPYTYPE</i>]
ccm5005	An invalid mount point is specified. mount point=[<i>MOUNTPOINT</i>]	An invalid mount point was specified. mount point=[<i>MOUNTPOINT</i>]
ccm5006	An invalid device is specified. device=[<i>DEVICE</i>]	An invalid device was specified. device=[<i>DEVICE</i>]

Changes the name of the host affinity group list display command

Version	Details
14.1 or earlier	acinq hag
14.2	acinq hostag

Changes the method for adding remote ETERNUS Disk storage system

- For Windows environment:

Version	Details
14.0 or earlier	Register by specifying a nonexistent drive letter as an access path (Note)
14.1	Register by specifying the BOX-ID of ETERNUS Disk storage system

Note: The "access path" is changed to the "access volume" starting from Version 15.0.

- For Solaris and Linux environments:

Version	Details
14.1 or earlier	Register by specifying a nonexistent device as an access path (Note)
14.2	Register by specifying the BOX-ID of ETERNUS Disk storage system

Note: The "access path" is changed to the "access volume" starting from Version 15.0.

Chapter 3 Upgrade for Express Version 14.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Express Version 14.x.

To upgrade Express Version 14.x to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

Point

- The Upgrade Installation can be performed for Express.
- If upgrading Express, the following information cannot be transferred from the previous version.
 - Event log history
 - Login/Logout history
 - Configuration modification history
 - User Account of Express Web GUI

3.1 Before installation

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for Express.

3.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Back up the operational environment of Express for the previous version level.

Note

The following information cannot be backed up. Save the current setting information in a memo.

- Contact information when trouble occurs
- Servers registered in Express

See

For details about the backup method, refer to "ETERNUS SF Express User's Guide" for the relevant version level.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.

Note

The following information cannot be continuously used.

- Account for using the GUI client



See

Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	Reference
Storage Management Server	A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)
Storage Management Server which also serves as a Storage Server	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows) A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for the previous version level.



See

For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

3.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed. The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.
For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the Express program.
For details on the required space, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Express User's Guide" for the relevant previous version.

3.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation

Check if any incompatible software for this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program is installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.
If the incompatible software is found, refer to that software manual and uninstall it before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on the incompatible software, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3.1.4 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

3.1.5 Database size estimation

A database is necessary for this version of Express.
The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

3.1.6 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

If AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Cancel the configuration information for Web server (For using AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x on Windows Server 2003 only)

Cancel the web server configuration information as follows:

1. Login to the system in which you want to uninstall the AdvancedCopy Manager.
The login user must have Administrator privileges to uninstall the previous version level.
2. If you configured the web server during installation, cancel the web server configuration information.

Execute the following command on the command prompt screen.

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\alias -u
```

For details on the command, refer to "Web server setting and setting cancellation command (alias)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" for the relevant previous version level.

2. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- "[A.7 Unsetup of database](#)"

3. Uninstall Symfoware.

Uninstall Symfoware if you are using Symfoware Server that is included in AdvancedCopy Manager of the previous version level on Windows Server 2003.

Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.

If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.

3.2 Upgrade Installation

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The "<System Drive>\ETERNUS_SF" directory is used as the base location for the Program Directory, Environment Directory and Work Directory.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

11 port numbers are used, as follows:

Service	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen	Used port number
Web Console service	ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
communication service 1	Communications service 1	1226
communication service 2	Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	Exclusive control service	9852
Internal use	Internal Port 1	28005
	Internal Port 2	28009
	Internal Port 3	28443
	Internal Port 4	24916

- Custom installation

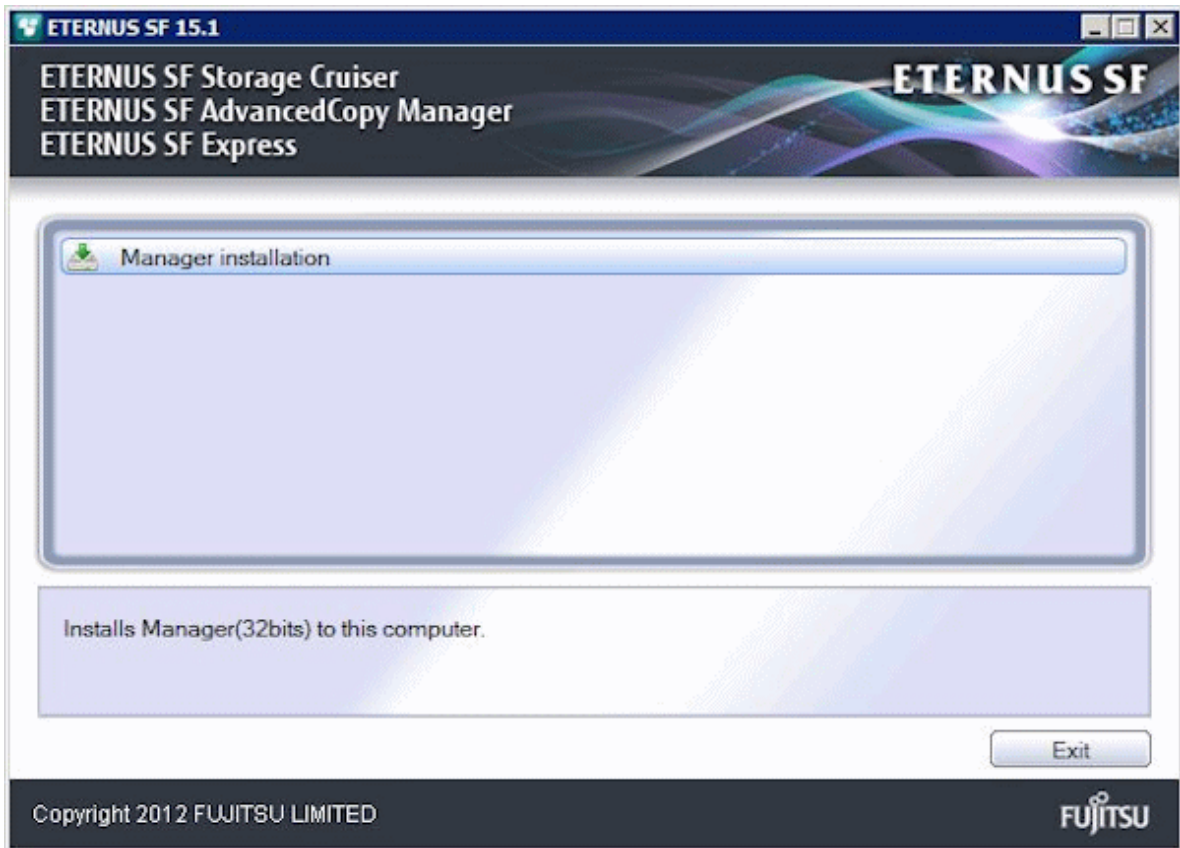
Upgrade is done by entering the configuration information on the screen (installation destination, communication service port numbers).

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

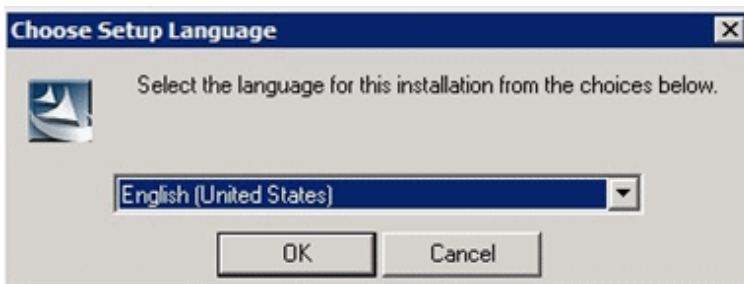
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

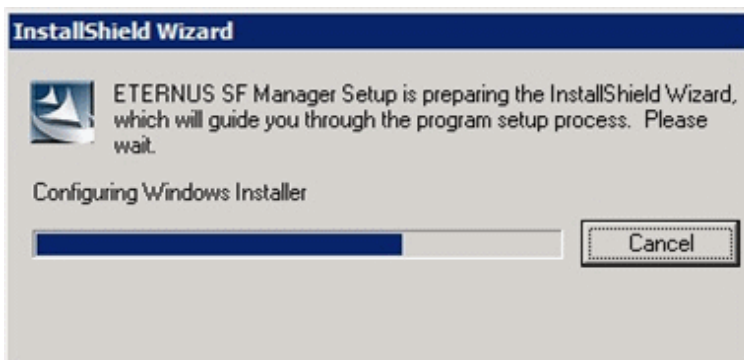
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



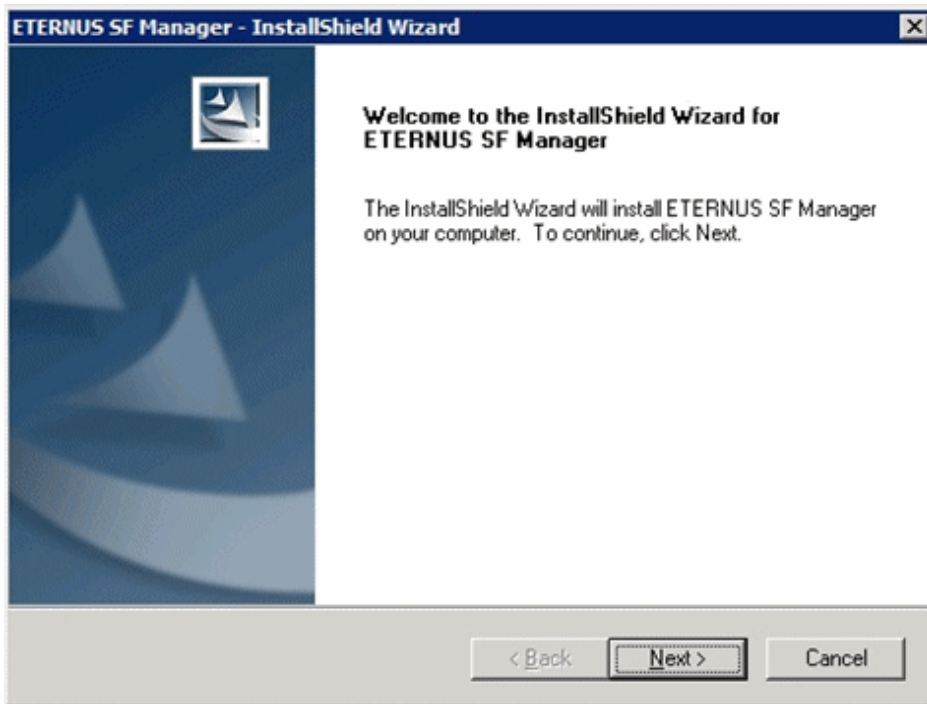
4. The [Choose Setup Language] screen is displayed. Select the language to be used for the installation and click the [OK] button.
The language selected in this screen is used during the installation, and also during the uninstallation.



5. The following screen is displayed. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this stage, click the [Cancel] button.

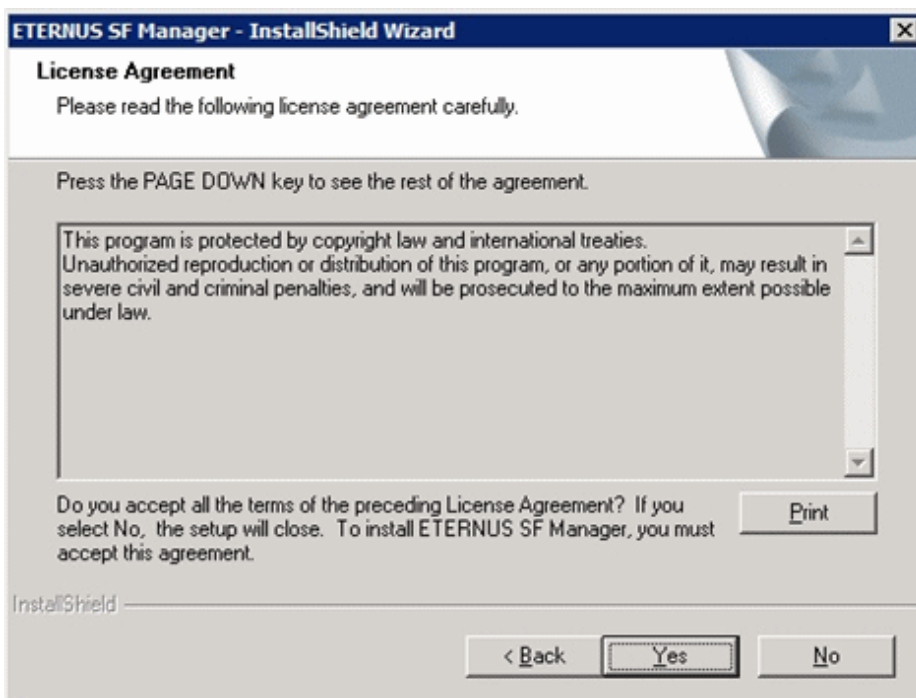


6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.

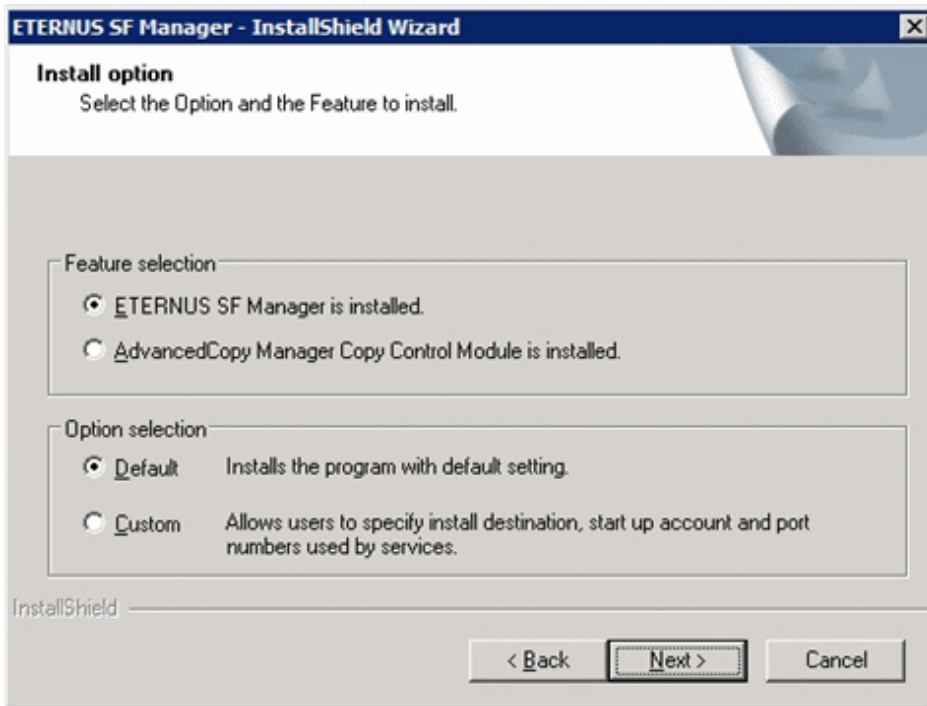


7. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.

After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



8. Select the functions and options to install in the [Install option] screen.



Feature selection

Select [ETERMUS SF Manager is installed.].

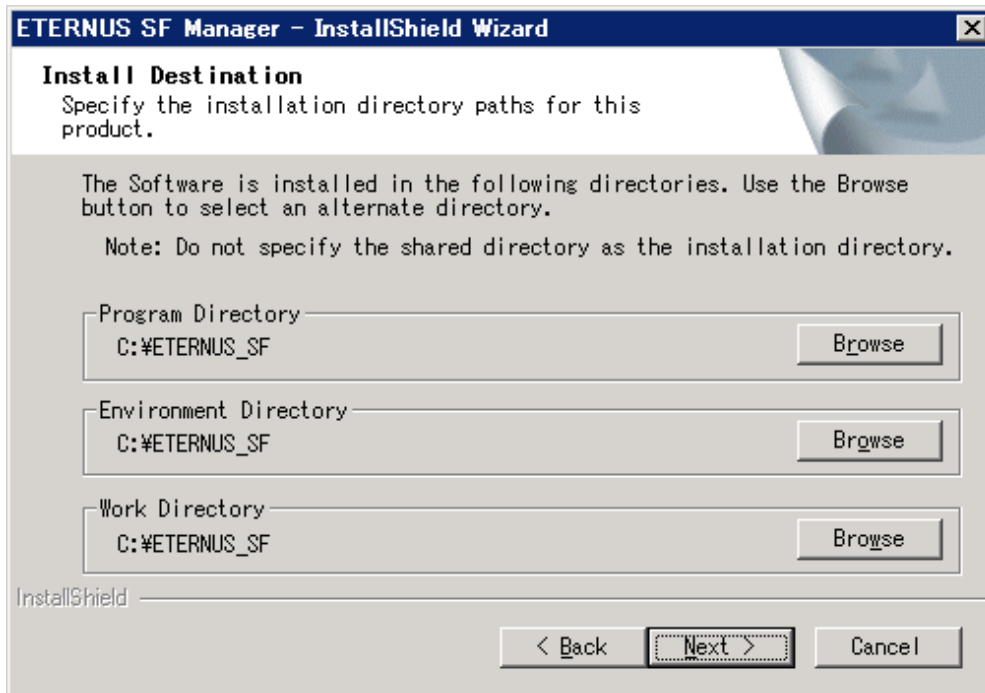
Option selection

Select the desired options according to the following information.

Install option	Explanation
Default	<p>Changing values in the [Installation Destination] screen and [Port Registration] screen is optional and can be omitted. In that case, steps 9 and 10 can be skipped.</p> <p>In this installation method, the following checks are automatically performed regarding the information provided as a default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is there enough disk space for the installation in the default directory? - Are the default port numbers available? <p>If an error is detected at this stage, a warning dialog is displayed. If no error is detected, the [Start Copying Files] screen is displayed.</p>
Custom	The installation information must be entered in the screens for step 9 and later.

9. Specify the installation directory in the [Installation Destination] screen.

If installing to a directory other than the default directory, click the [Browse] button and change the install location. After designating all of the directories, click the [Next] button.



Note

- The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ;] cannot be used in directory names.
- The number of characters in a directory name must be between 4 and 70.

10. Specify the port number for the services in the [Port Registration] screen.

Service	Port Number
ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
Communications service 1	1226
Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	9852

For Internal Use	
Internal Port 1	28005
Internal Port 2	28009
Internal Port 3	28443
Internal Port 4	24916

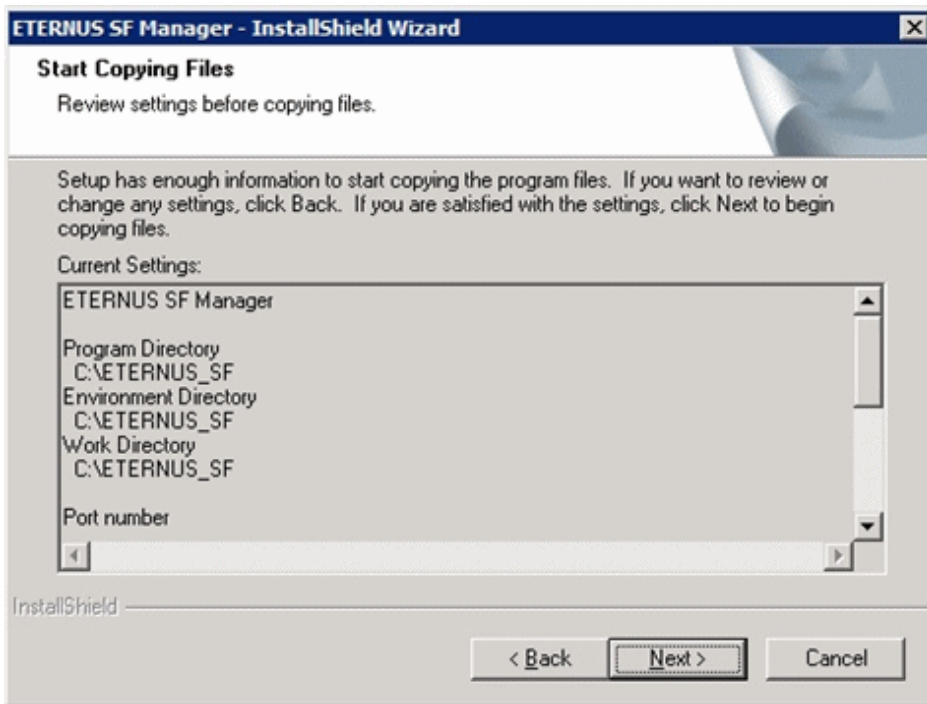
The values displayed on the screen opening are default values. If necessary, enter replacement port numbers matching your environment. Values between 5001 and 32767 are valid.

After finishing input, click the [Next] button. If one of the entered values is already in use, the input screen will be displayed again.

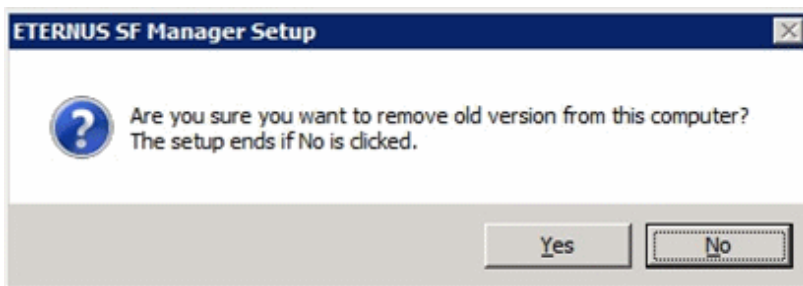
11. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen.

If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.

To go back and change a setting, click the [Back] button.



12. The following screen is displayed. To proceed with the uninstallation of the previous version, click the [Yes] button.



13. The previous version uninstallation is started.

The uninstallation program is executed.

Answer the questions on each screen as the uninstallation program executes.

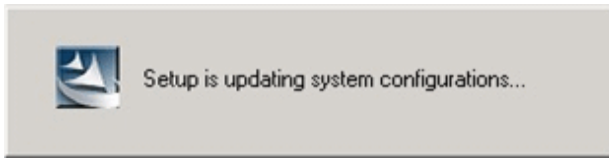
Point

- For the question regarding restarting the computer, click the [No] button. When clicking the [Yes] button, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
- When the uninstallation of the previous version completes successfully, the [Uninstallation was completed successfully] screen may be displayed. Although the instruction on the screen indicates the deletion of the files and folders, do not delete the files and folders when operating the Upgrade Installation.

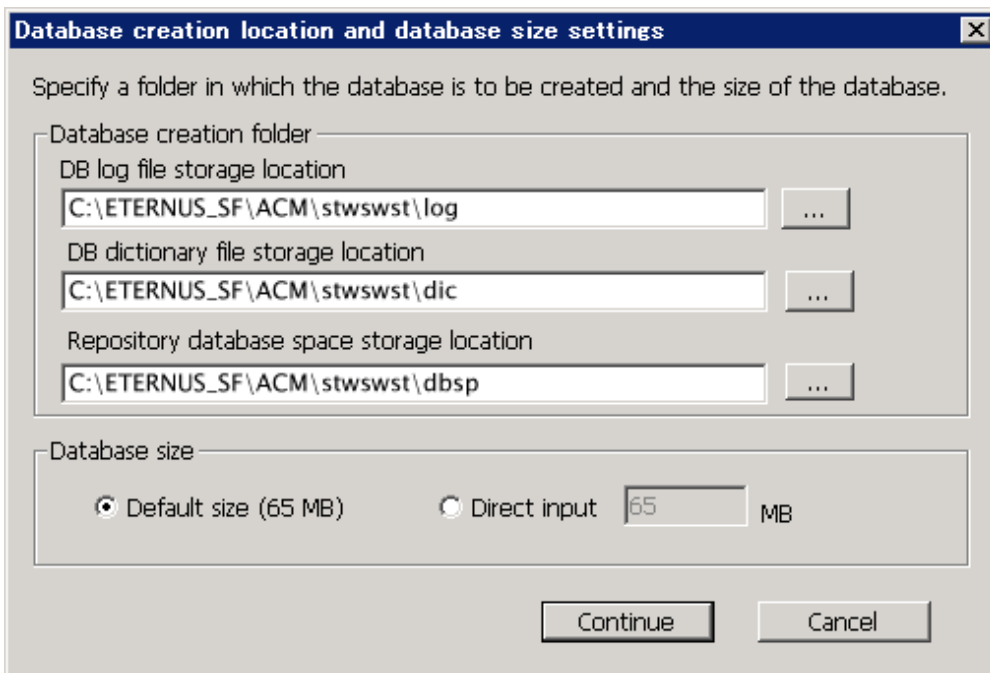
14. Once the previous version uninstallation is completed, the copy of the new program version is started.

During the process, the file copy completion status is displayed in the [Setup Status] screen.

15. Once the copy process ends, the system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



16. Enter the requested information for the repository database creation in the following screen. After the input, click the [Continue] button.



Database creation folder

This is the folder where the database will be created.

Enter the path, including the drive name, for each of the following database directories. The specified folders must be new NTFS folders. If a folder specified is not a NTFS folder or if it already exists, choose another name.

The default of the folders to store the repository database is displayed in each field. Change if necessary.

- DB log file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB log file.
- DB dictionary file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB dictionary file.
- Repository database space storage location
Specify the folder for storing the repository database space.

Note

- Do not specify the shared folder as the folder where the database will be created.
- The number of characters in a folder name must be between 4 and 80. The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ; # ' @] cannot be used in folder names.
- Do not check the option [Compress drive to save disk space] in the **General** tab for any of these drives. Overhead is greater to a compressed drive than a non compressed drive. Depending on the amount of I/O, access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions.

- Do not check the [Compress or Encrypt Attributes] in the [Advanced Attributes] section of the [Properties] or [Advanced] part of the **General** tab.
Overhead is greater to a compressed and/or encrypted drive. Access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions.
If the encryption property is checked, access errors may occur when decryption cannot be performed.

Database size

This is the size for the repository database.

The database size is entered in MB. The size to enter is the result of the calculation performed before installation as described in "3.1.5 Database size estimation". To use the default value, check the [Default size (65 MB)] box.

17. The following screen is displayed for the IP address and the database user settings.
Once the input is finished, click the [Settings] button.

The default value is displayed in the screen. Change if necessary.

IP address

Enter the IP address of the Management Server (own system).

If the previous version level of AdvancedCopy Manager has been installed, specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous production.

Note

When the Management Server has two or more IP addresses, specify the IP address which is available for communicating with the Management Server from all of the AdvancedCopy Manager's agents.

Repository access user

Enter username and password for the database access user.

The usernames entered here must have local login or domain login permissions at the OS level.

For the default username and password, refer to "Installation procedure" in the "Software Release Guide".

However, use other than default value because of security reasons.

The following conditions apply for the usernames and passwords:

- Username and password must be compatible with the underlying operating system.
- Username and password must be no longer than 18 characters (bytes).

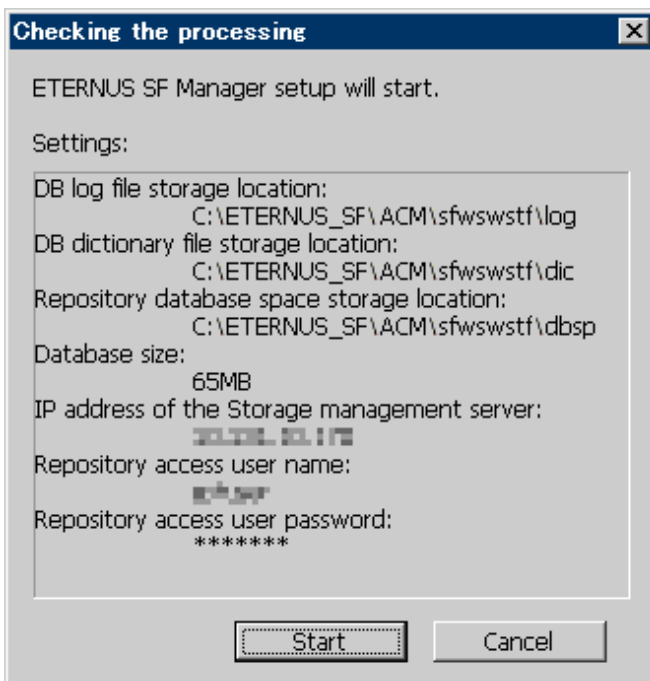


- If the user name specified here is not yet registered to the system, perform the registration, and add either local login or domain login privileges. Refer to the table below and specify a user that corresponds to the server type being used.

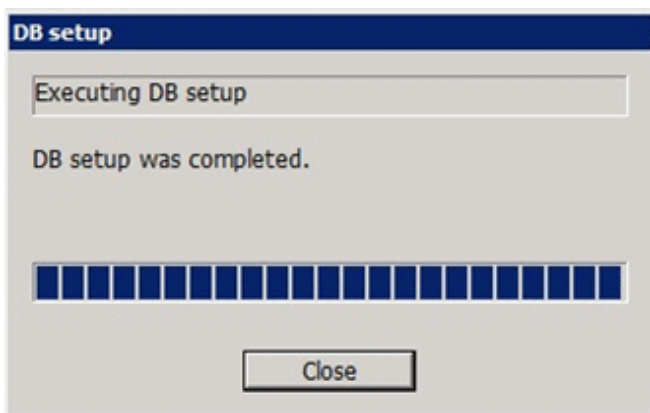
Server type	User to be specified
Domain Controller	Domain user
Machine that belongs to the domain	Local user
WORKGROUP (not belong to the domain)	

- When specifying a user name that is already registered to the system, use identical characters (e.g. uppercase and lowercase letters) to the registered user name.

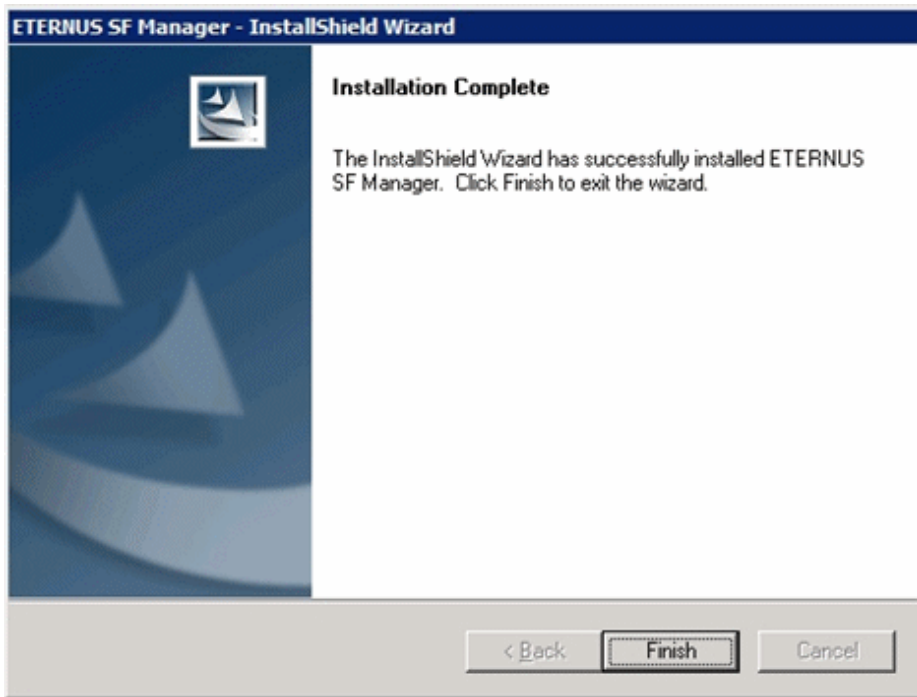
18. The following screen is displayed. Check the contents and click the [Start] button.



19. The database setup process starts. When the process is finished, the following screen is displayed. Click the [Close] button.



20. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



21. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

3.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

Once the Express Upgrade Installation has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

3.3.1 Restoration from previous version

Restore the operational environment of Express backed up in "3.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

Refer to "Restoring Express's manager environment (Windows)" in the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide" for this version level, execute from Step 4.



Note

In the restoring procedure, the directory name of the copy source may differ to the previous version level. In such a case, read as the previous version level directory name as follows.

Target for restore	Directory name of this version level	Directory name of previous version level
Management information for disk storage system	\$BAK_DIR\ESC\	\$BAK_DIR\Storage Cruiser\
Essential files	\$BAK_DIR\ESC\	\$BAK_DIR\Storage Cruiser\
Files related to the performance management function	\$BAK_DIR\ESC\	\$BAK_DIR\Storage Cruiser\
Customizable files	\$BAK_DIR\ESC\	\$BAK_DIR\Storage Cruiser\
Files associated with definition of copy group and copy pair	\$BAK_DIR\CCM\	\$BAK_DIR\AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module\

\$BAK_DIR is a backup destination directory.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "3.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

Note

For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	Reference
Management Server	A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Perform in order of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none">A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows)A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "3.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "A.14 Restore of the environment setting files".

3.3.2 Import of the Configuration information

Import the Configuration information from the previous version by executing the configuration information import command (esfimportdevconf) with administrator permissions.

Check that the targeted devices can be accessed before executing the configuration information import command.

```
<Program directory>\Common\bin\esfimportdevconf
```

After executing the configuration information import command, confirm that the "Complete" is displayed in the [IMPORT STATUS] column in the configuration import status display command (esfimportdisplay) of the configuration information import.

See

Refer to "10.2 Command reference" for details about the each import command.

3.3.3 Setting up user account

Set up a user account in order to use the ETERNUS SF Manager functions.



See

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up user account" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3.3.4 Setting up for using Web Console

If you set up firewalls between the PC on which the Web Console is launched and the Management Server, make settings so as to allow transmission to pass the firewalls.



See

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up for using Web Console" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3.3.5 Set account information that can access to ETERNUS Disk storage system

Set the account information, user name and password, that can access to the ETERNUS Disk storage system.



See

For details on how to set up, refer to "Set and change the information of the account that can access ETERNUS Disk storage system" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

3.3.6 License registration

Register the appropriate licenses.



See

Refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the license settings.

3.3.7 Redefinition of the missing information

- Administrator information

Enter the administrator information



See

Refer to "Display and change the contact information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level about server registration.

- Server information

Enter the server information



Refer to "Register the server" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level about server registration.

- Connection type

To use the Advanced Copy function of Express, set the connection type with ETERNUS Disk storage system.



Refer to "Connection type settings" in the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide" for this version level about connection type settings.

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure.



For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
-----
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B###LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90
Disk Array Name : DX90
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B###LH4311015511##
IP Address : 10.124.6.251
Admin User : ****
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -  
path X:  
Successful completion.
```

 **Point**

.....
When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name to the access volume (previously called "access path") in the previous version, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.
.....

5. Reload the Configuration information.

 **See**

.....
For reloading the configuration information, refer to "Reload ETERNUS Disk storage system configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.
.....

3.3.8 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the stguserset (Repository access user change command).

 **See**

.....
For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.
.....

3.3.9 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation of Express Manager is completed. Restart the operation.

Chapter 4 Upgrade for Express Version 15.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Express Version 15.x.

To upgrade to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

4.1 Upgrade for Express (for Windows)

This section describes the Upgrade Installation for Express for Windows.



In the Windows Server 2003 environment, using the procedure mentioned below cannot perform the Upgrade Installation process. When upgrading versions in the Windows Server 2003 environment, take the following procedure:

1. Uninstall the before version product.
2. If Symfoware Server included in AdvancedCopy Manager is being used, take the following step:
Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.
3. Install this version level of product.

4.1.1 Before installation (for Windows)

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for Express for Windows.

1. Check the Symfoware.

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

2. Stop the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Stop_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

3. Backup the Windows system.



If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, backup the Windows system before performing the Upgrade Installation process.

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

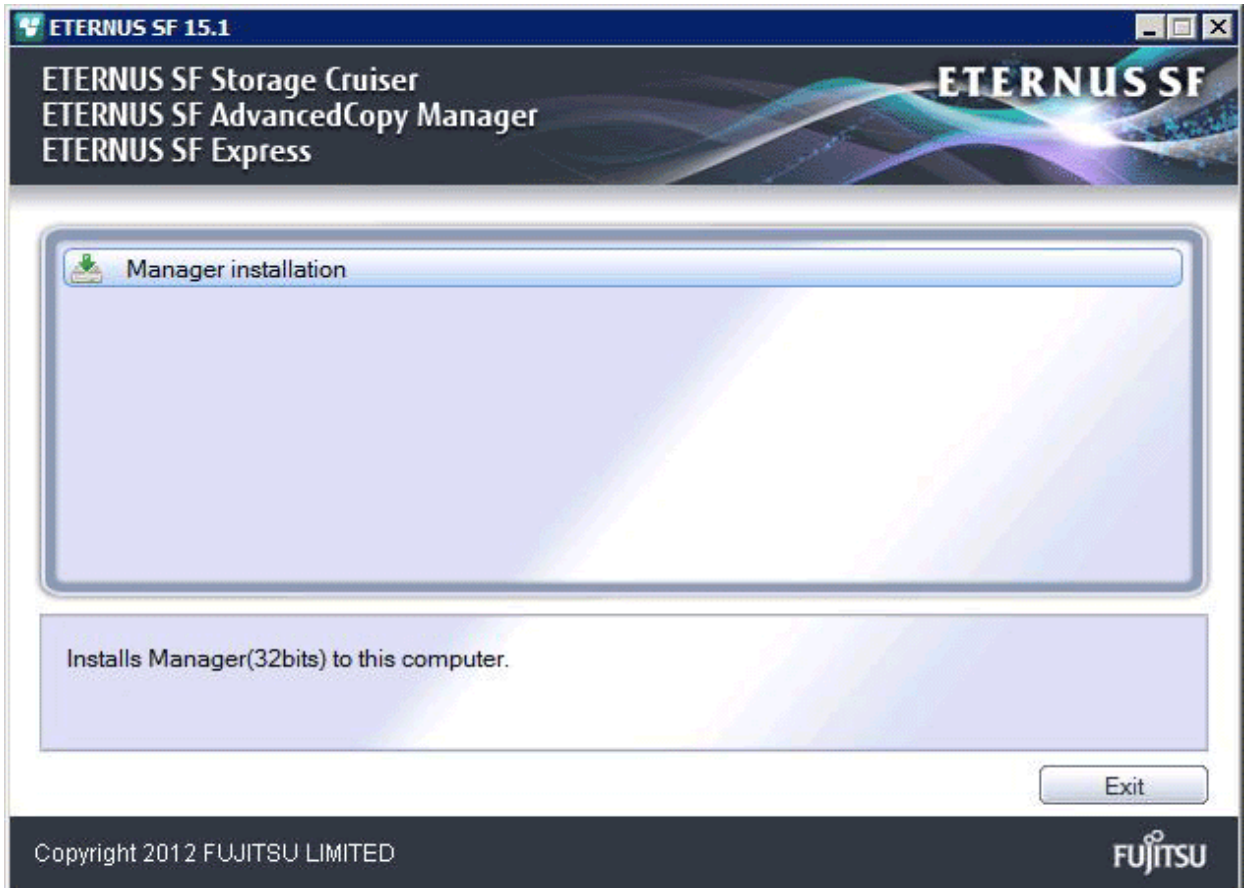
4.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

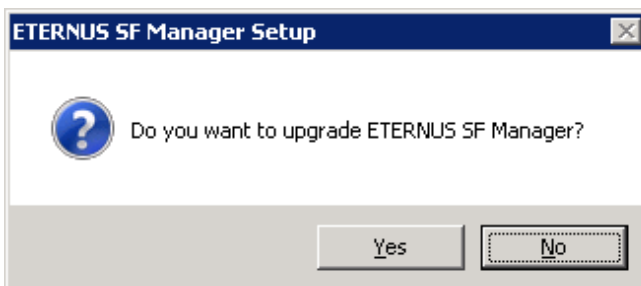
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

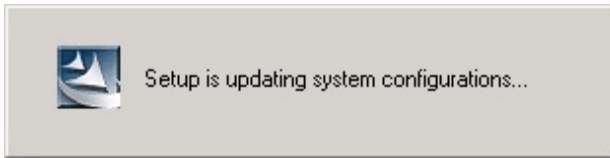
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



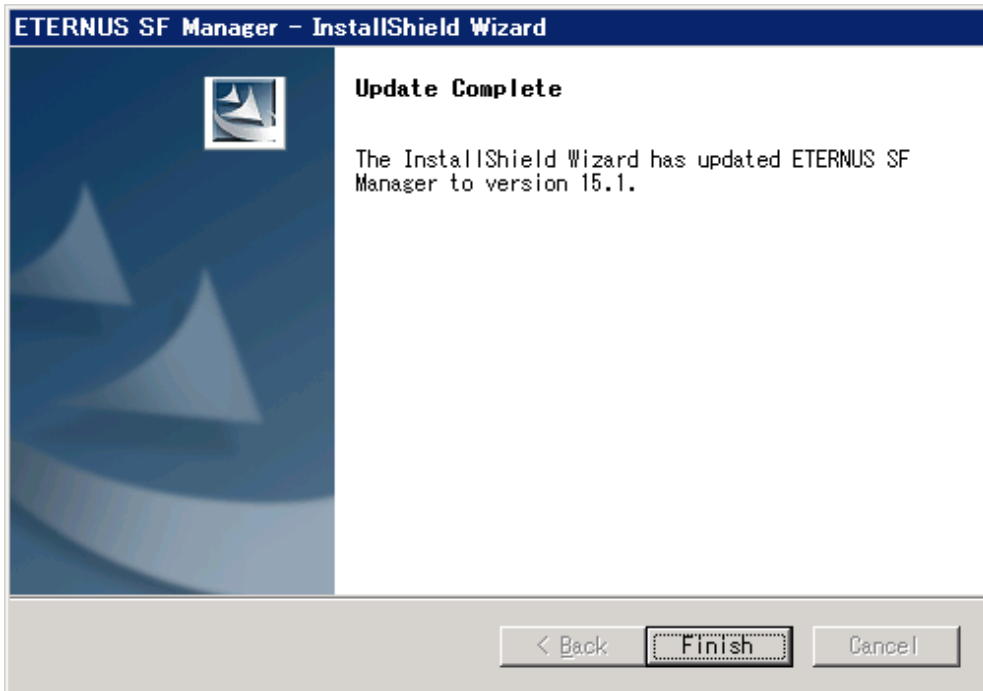
4. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



5. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



6. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



7. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

4.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows)

After the Upgrade Installation process for Express for Windows, perform the following procedure.

1. Start the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Start_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

2. Reset the password for repository access user.

Use stguserset (Repository access user change command) to reset the password for repository access user.



.....
Even if the password is not changed, be sure to reset the password.
.....



For details about the procedure, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

3. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).



For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

4.2 Upgrade for Express (for Linux)

This section describes the Upgrade Installation for Express for Linux.

4.2.1 Before installation (for Linux)

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for Express for Linux.

4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Back up the operational environment of Express for Linux for the previous version level.



For details about the backup method, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide" for the relevant to previous version:

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.



Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Storage Management Server	Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Linux	Perform the steps in the following order:

Server type	OS	Reference
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) 2. A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

.....

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for the previous version level.



For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

.....

Backup of common control repository

Backup the common control repository.



For details about the backup method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- "[A.16 Backup of common control repository \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)"
-

Backup of license management database

Backup the license management database.



For details about the backup method of the license management database, refer to the following section:

- "[A.18 Backup of license management database \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)".
-

4.2.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to the "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version.

4.2.1.3 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

4.2.1.4 Database size estimation

A database is necessary for this version of Express.
The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

4.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

If AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Stop daemon.

Execute the following command to stop the daemon of AdvancedCopy Manager on the Management Server.

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stopacm
```

2. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- ["A.8 Cancel of repository settings"](#)

In the case of cluster operation

Under cluster operation, the user must execute cluster unsetup before uninstallation.



.....
For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Cluster environment deletion" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Installation Guide" for the relevant previous version level.
.....

4.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Linux.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The installation destination directories (/opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm, etc) cannot be modified.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

The following ports are used:

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Web Console service	esfmanagerweb	9855/tcp	ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service
communication service 1	stgxfws	1226/tcp	Communications_service_1
communication service 2	sscruisera	4917/tcp	Communications_service_2
Repository service 1	rdaswstf	32004/tcp	Repository_service_1
Repository service 2	esfpostgres	15432/tcp	Repository_service_2
Remote access service	rmiswstf	9851/tcp	Remote_access_service
Exclusive control service	semswstf	9852/tcp	Exclusive_control_service
Internal use	esfmanagertomcat1	28005/tcp	Internal_port_1
	esfmanagertomcat2	28009/tcp	Internal_port_2
	esfmanagertomcat3	28443/tcp	Internal_port_3
	sscruiserm	24916/tcp	Internal_port_4
	astm	24917/tcp	Internal_port_5

- Custom installation

Modify the installation information (port number for the communications service, character code, and so on) for the Upgrade Installation.

Define the installation information to the install parameter file. Specify the install parameter file to which the installation information has been defined when executing the install shell.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.1 Install parameter file \(for ETERNUS SF Manager\)](#)".

 Note

- You cannot change the install directory such as /opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm.
- Make sure to perform the followings when the previous version level of AdvancedCopy Manager has been installed and the Management Server has two or more IP addresses.
 - Perform the custom installation.
 - Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous version for the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address".

 Point

If an IP address for the Management Server is not specified in the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address", the IP address for the Management Server is set automatically during the installation. After the installation is completed, change the IP address if

required. For the information on how to change an IP address, refer to "Changing the IP address of Management Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the operating system of the Management Server.

Note

When Symfoware is already installed, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV temporarily.
2. Perform the Upgrade Installation.
3. Start the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Execute the installation shell script.

Example of a default installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh
```

Example of a custom installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s <Install parameter file>
```

Specify the absolute path name of the install parameter file edited in advance for *<Install parameter file>*.

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                ETERNUS SF V15.1                |
|  All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012  |
+-----+

Setting of installation parameter file.

Installation_function:      ETERNUS SF Manager

Character_code:            UTF8

Port number
  ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service: 9855
  Communications_service_1:    1226
  Communications_service_2:    4917
```

```

Repository_service_1:          32004
Repository_service_2:          15432
Remote_access_service:         9851
Exclusive_control_service:     9852
Internal_port_1:               28005
Internal_port_2:               28009
Internal_port_3:               28443
Internal_port_4:               24916
Internal_port_5:               24917
Repository database setup
DB_file_directory:             /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
RDB_dictionary_directory:     /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
RDB_log_file_directory:       /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
Repository_DB_space_directory: /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
Repository_data_size:          65
Management_server_IP_address:
AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH:    32bit
esfpostgres_UID:
Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:

```

- The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```

An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:

```

 **Point**

.....

For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation. When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.

.....

- If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```

INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.

```

- Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```

# cd

```

- Unmount the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```

# umount /mnt/dvd

```

- Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

Upgrade Installation for Express for Linux is completed.

4.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Linux)

Once the Express Upgrade Installation for Linux has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

4.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version

Restore the operational environment of Express backed up in "[4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".

For details about restore the operational environment, refer to "Restoring Express's manager environment (Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide" for this version level, execute from Step 4 to 9.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



Note

For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS type	Reference
Management Server	Linux	A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Linux	Perform in order of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none">A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "A.14 Restore of the environment setting files".

Restoration of license management database

Restore the license management database backed up in "4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details about the restoration method of license management database, refer to the following section:

- "[A.22 Restore of license management database \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)".

Restoration of the common control repository

Restore the common control repository backed up in "4.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details about the restoration method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- "[A.20 Restore of common control repository \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)".

4.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure. (Command is an example for Windows)



For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
-----
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90
Disk Array Name : DX90
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511##
IP Address : 10.124.6.251
Admin User : ****
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -
path X:
Successful completion.
```



When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name to the access volume (previously called "access path") in the previous version, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

5. Reload the Configuration information.



For reloading the configuration information, refer to "Reload ETERNUS Disk storage system configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

4.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the `stguserset` (Repository access user change command).



See

.....
For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.
.....

4.2.3.4 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation of Express Manager for Linux is completed. Restart the operation.

However, when you change the SELinux setting to "enforcing" simultaneously with the migration, refer to the following manual for this version level and restart the operation after the installation of SELinux policy module for `snmptrapd`.

- "SNMP Trap setting (for Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide"

Chapter 5 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x/14.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser Version 13.x and 14.x.

Point

- With Storage Cruiser programs, the Upgrade Installation can be performed for the Storage Cruiser's manager only.

The Storage Cruiser's agent cannot be upgraded by using the Upgrade Installation.

For upgrading the Storage Cruiser's agent, as with previous versions, it is necessary to uninstall the previous version of the program and then install this version of the program.

For details, refer to "[5.2 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent](#)".

- If upgrading Storage Cruiser, make sure that the Storage Cruiser's manager version level is the same or higher than the Storage Cruiser's agent version level.
- If upgrading Storage Cruiser, the following information cannot be imported:
 - Event log history
 - Account for using the GUI client
- If Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are both installed on the same server, when upgrading one, both of Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module get upgraded. Therefore it is necessary to perform backups of the previous versions before starting the upgrade procedure.

5.1 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager

This section describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's manager.

To upgrade to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

5.1.1 Before installation

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for Storage Cruiser's manager.

5.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Backup the operational environment of Storage Cruiser's manager for the previous version level using the following procedure.

Note

The iSCSI HBA information cannot be backed up. Save the current settings information in a memo.

Refer to the iSCSI port property information in the resource view of Storage Cruiser for the previous version level.

1. Stop the Storage Cruiser's manager.

- For Windows environment:

Stop the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Manager" in the Windows [Services] screen.

- For Solaris, Linux environment:

Execute the following command.

```
# /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/managerctl stop
```



See

For details about stopping the Storage Cruiser's manager, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser User's Guide" for the relevant previous version.

2. Backup the operational environment of Storage Cruiser's manager for the previous version level, referring to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" for this version.

- For Windows environment:

Perform Steps 4 to 10 of "Backup of Windows Manager". In Step 4, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".



Note

The file or directory names of the copy source that are described in Steps 5 to 10 of "Backup of Windows Manager" differ to those of a previous version level.

The following table relates the previous and current file and directory names.

Description in "Backup of Windows Manager"	Path names of previous version level
\$TMP_DIR\ESC\Manager\var\opt\FJSVssmgr\...	\$TMP_DIR\Manager\var\opt\FJSVssmgr\...
\$ENV_DIR\ESC\Manager\etc\opt\FJSVssmgr\...	\$ENV_DIR\Manager\etc\opt\FJSVssmgr\...
\$INS_DIR\ESC\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\...	\$INS_DIR\Manager\opt\FJSVssmgr\...

- For Solaris, Linux environment:

Perform Steps 4 to 10 in "Backup of Solaris OS Manager". In Step 4, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.



Note

The following information cannot be continuously used.

- Account for using the GUI client



See

Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Storage Management Server	Windows	A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Storage Management Server which also serves as a Storage Server	Windows	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows) 2. A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)

Server type	OS	Reference
	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) 2. A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for the previous version level.



See

For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, backup the definition of the license information.

Backup the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm backup command. For details of esflm backup command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version level.

Example of executing esflm backup command is as below. The file specified with *<file_name>* will be created as a backup file.

```
> esflm backup <file_name>
Backup of license database was performed successfully
```

5.1.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the Storage Cruiser's manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Installation Guide" for the relevant previous version.

5.1.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation

Check if any incompatible software for this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program is installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

If the incompatible software is found, refer to that software manual and uninstall it before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on the incompatible software, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5.1.1.4 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

5.1.1.5 Database size estimation

A database is necessary for this version of Storage Cruiser.
The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details about how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5.1.1.6 Registration of access user for repository database (for Solaris, Linux)

This version of Storage Cruiser's manager requires registration of an access user for the repository database.
Therefore, register the access user for repository database before starting Upgrade Installation.



See

For details about registering a username and a password, refer to "Installation procedure" in the "Software Release Guide".

5.1.1.7 Kernel parameter tuning (for Solaris, Linux)

Kernel parameter tuning must be performed in order to use this version of Storage Cruiser's manager. Before starting the Upgrade Installation, perform the necessary kernel tuning.



See

For details about tuning, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5.1.1.8 Confirmation of Port number for Communication service (for Solaris, Linux)

This version of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager uses additional ports.
Therefore, make sure the new ports are unused before starting Upgrade Installation



See

.....
For details about using port numbers, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

5.1.1.9 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

If AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Cancel the configuration information for Web server (For using AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x on Windows Server 2003 only.)

Cancel the web server configuration information as follows:

1. Login to the system in which you want to uninstall the AdvancedCopy Manager.
The login user must have Administrator privileges to uninstall the previous version level.
2. If you configured the web server during installation, cancel the web server configuration information.
Execute the following command on the command prompt screen.

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\alias -u
```

For details on the command, refer to "Web server setting and setting cancellation command (alias)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" for the relevant previous version level.

2. Stop daemon. (for Solaris and Linux environments only)

Execute the following command to stop the daemon of AdvancedCopy Manager on the Management Server (Storage Management Server).

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stopacm
```

3. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- For Windows environment:
["A.7 Unsetup of database"](#)
- For Solaris, Linux environment:
["A.8 Cancel of repository settings"](#)

4. Uninstall Symfoware.

Uninstall Symfoware if you are using Symfoware Server that is included in AdvancedCopy Manager of the previous version level on Windows Server 2003.

Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.

In the case of cluster operation

Under cluster operation, the user must execute cluster unsetup before uninstallation.



For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Cluster environment deletion" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Installation Guide" for the relevant previous version level.

5.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Windows.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The "<System Drive>\ETERNUS_SF" directory is used as the base location for the Program Directory, Environment Directory and Work Directory.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

11 port numbers are used, as follows:

Service	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen	Used port number
Web Console service	ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
communication service 1	Communications service 1	1226
communication service 2	Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	Exclusive control service	9852
Internal use	Internal Port 1	28005
	Internal Port 2	28009
	Internal Port 3	28443
	Internal Port 4	24916

- Custom installation

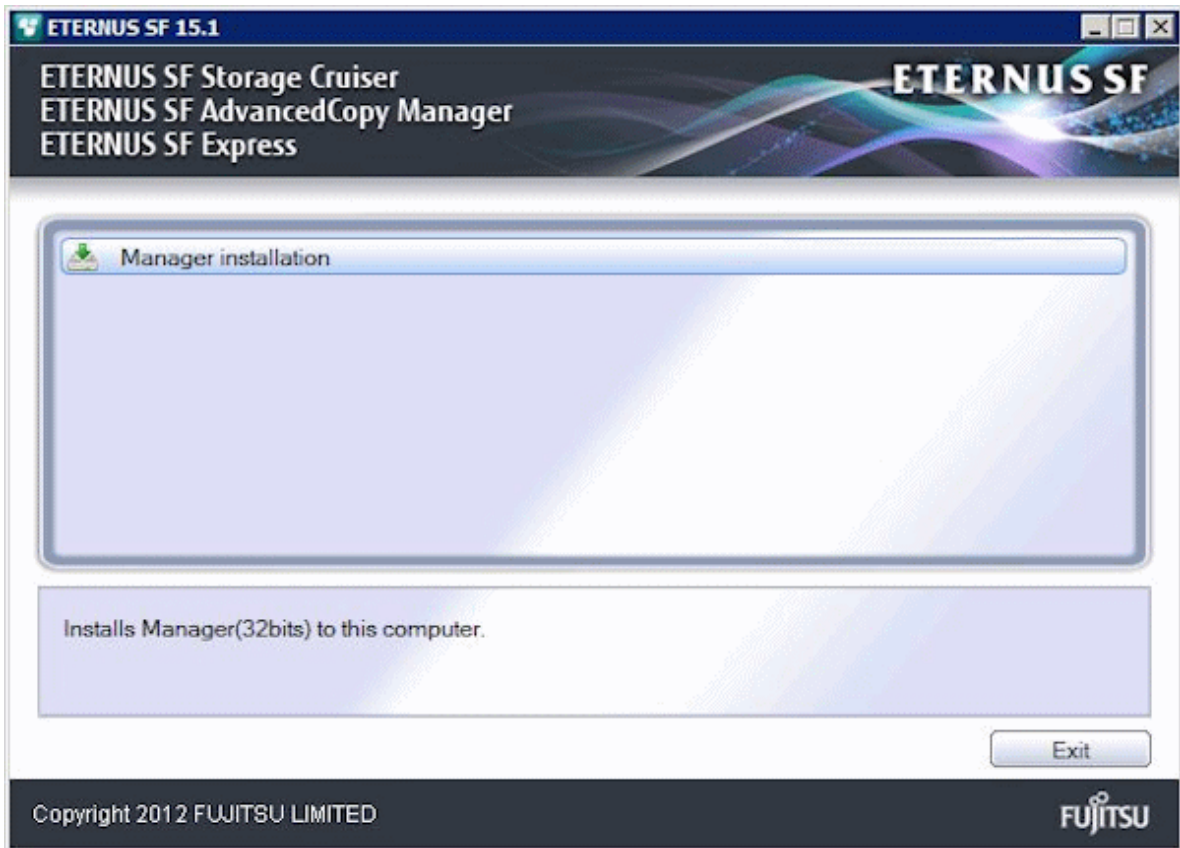
Upgrade is done by entering the configuration information on the screen (installation destination, communication service port numbers).

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

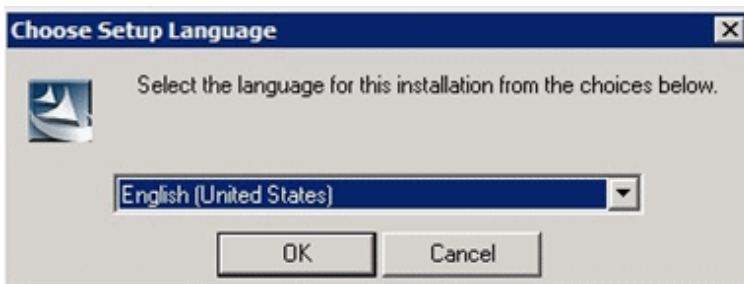
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

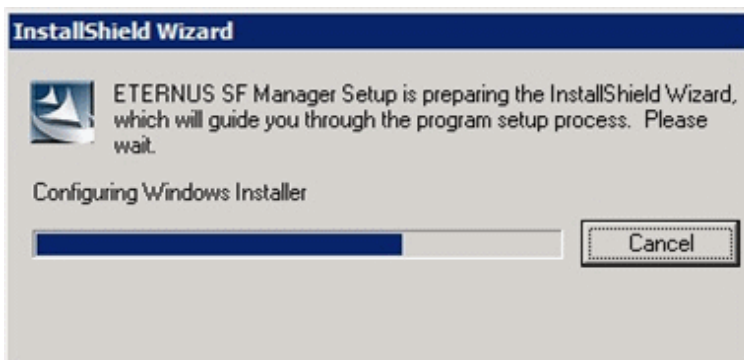
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



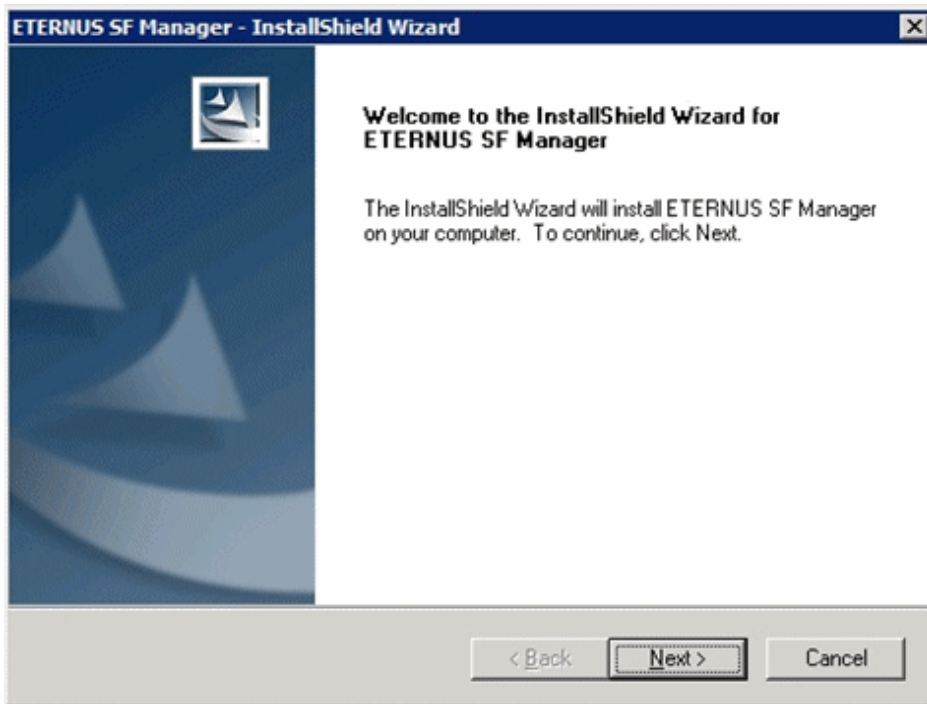
4. The [Choose Setup Language] screen is displayed. Select the language to be used for the installation and click the [OK] button.
The language selected in this screen is used during the installation, and also during the uninstallation.



5. The following screen is displayed. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this stage, click the [Cancel] button.

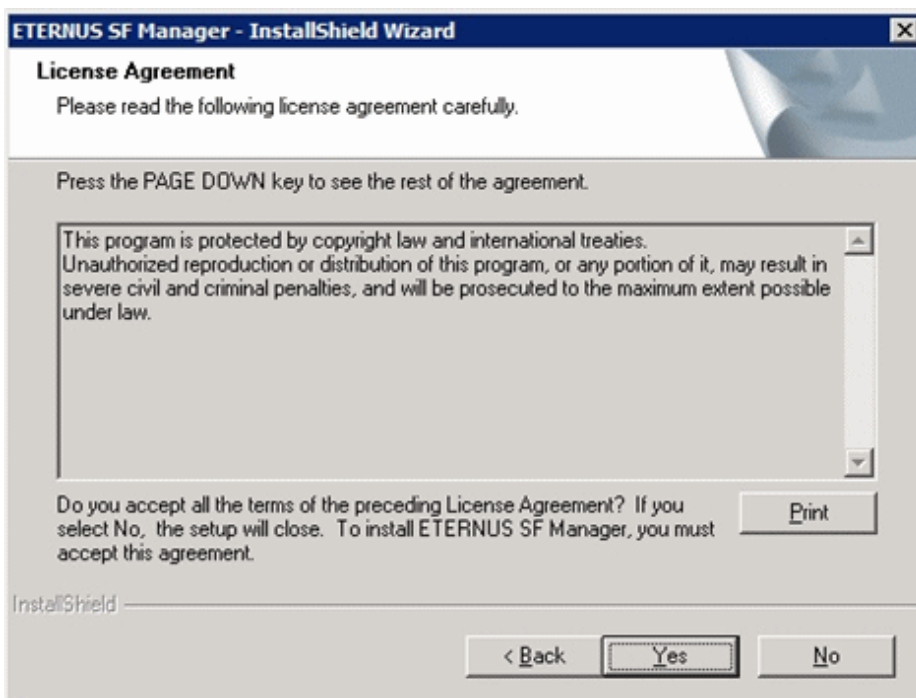


6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.

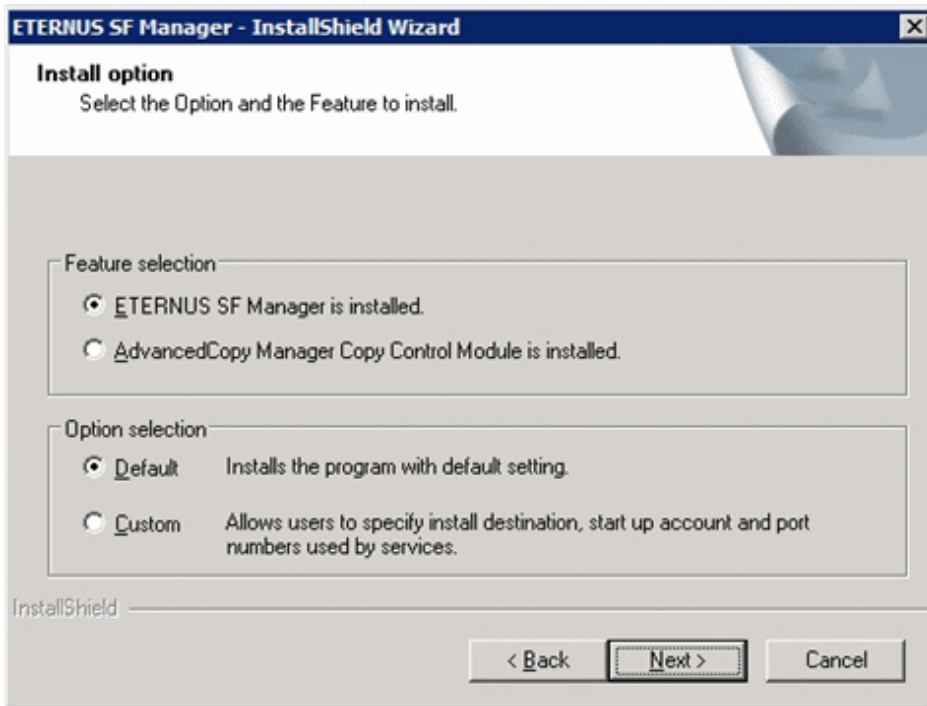


7. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.

After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



8. Select the functions and options to install in the [Install option] screen.



Feature selection

Select [ETERNUS SF Manager is installed.].

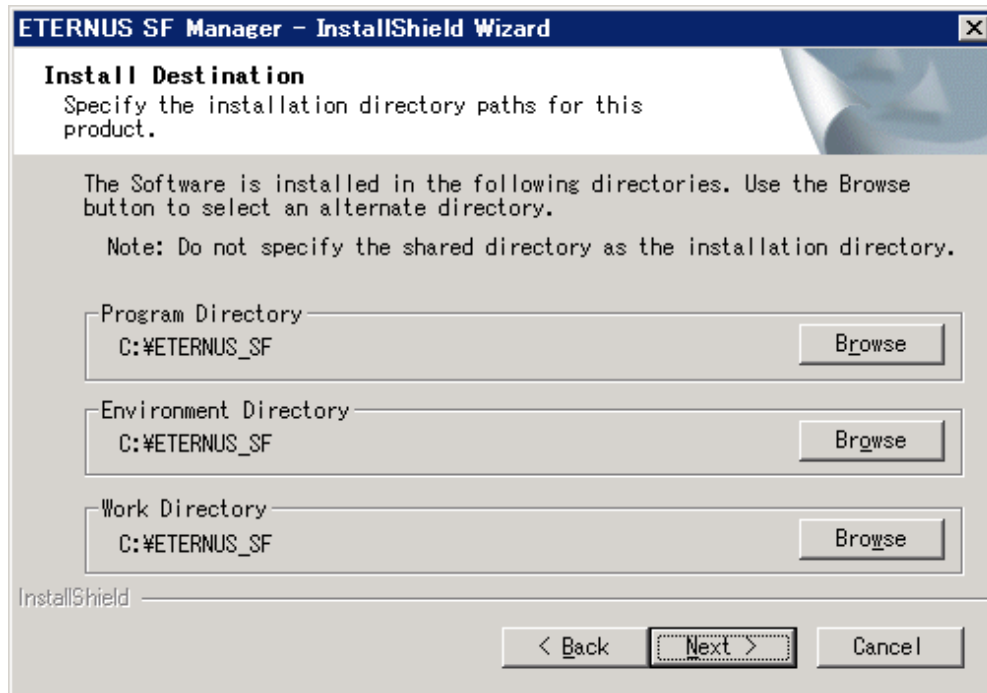
Option selection

Select the desired options according to the following information.

Install option	Explanation
Default	<p>Changing values in the [Installation Destination] screen and [Port Registration] screen is optional and can be omitted. In that case, steps 9 and 10 can be skipped.</p> <p>In this installation method, the following checks are automatically performed regarding the information provided as a default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is there enough disk space for the installation in the default directory? - Are the default port numbers available? <p>If an error is detected at this stage, a warning dialog is displayed. If no error is detected, the [Start Copying Files] screen is displayed.</p>
Custom	The installation information must be entered in the screens for step 9 and later.

9. Specify the installation directory in the [Installation Destination] screen.

If installing to a directory other than the default directory, click the [Browse] button and change the install location. After designating all of the directories, click the [Next] button.



Note

- The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ;] cannot be used in directory names.
- The number of characters in a directory name must be between 4 and 70.

10. Specify the port number for the services in the [Port Registration] screen.

Service	Port Number
ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
Communications service 1	1226
Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	9852

For Internal Use	
Internal Port 1	28005
Internal Port 2	28009
Internal Port 3	28443
Internal Port 4	24916

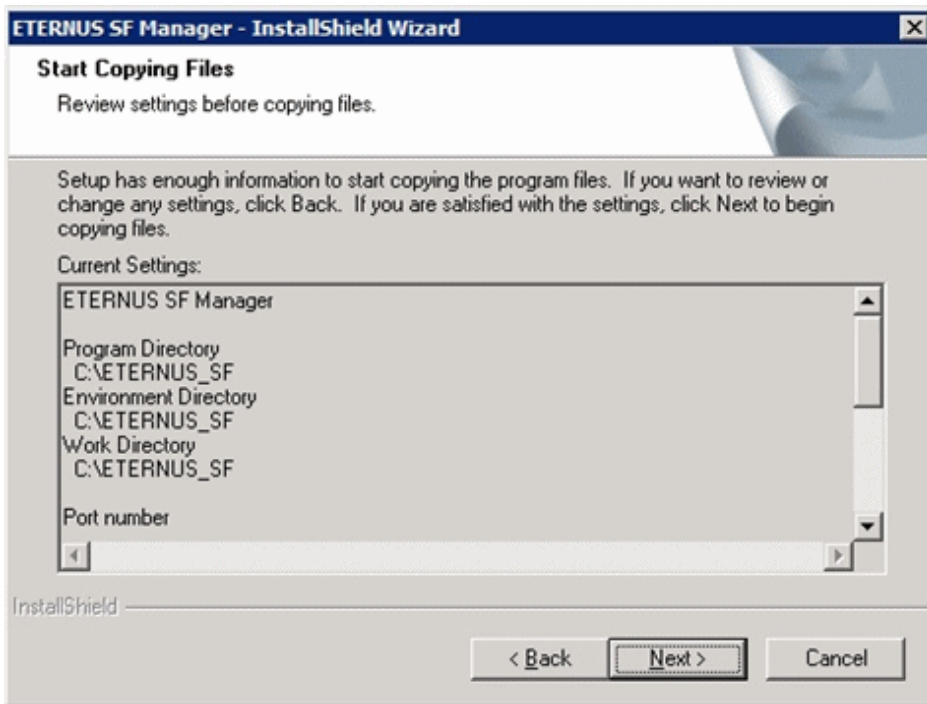
The initial values displayed are default values. If necessary, enter replacement port numbers matching your environment. Values between 5001 and 32767 are valid.

After finishing input, click the [Next] button. If one of the entered values is already in use, the input screen will be displayed again.

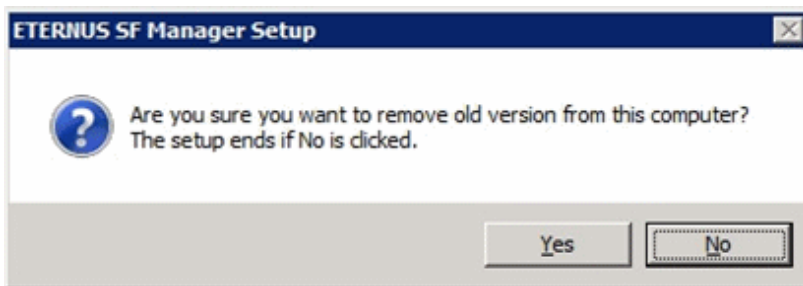
11. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen.

If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.

To go back and change a setting, click the [Back] button.



12. The following screen is displayed. To proceed with the uninstallation of the previous version, click the [Yes] button.



13. The previous version uninstallation is started.

The uninstallation program is executed.

Answer the questions on each screen as the uninstallation program executes.

Point

- For the question regarding restarting the computer, click the [No] button.
When clicking the [Yes] button, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
- When the uninstallation of the previous version completes successfully, the [Uninstallation was completed successfully] screen may be displayed. Although the instruction on the screen indicates the deletion of the files and folders, do not delete the files and folders when operating the Upgrade Installation.

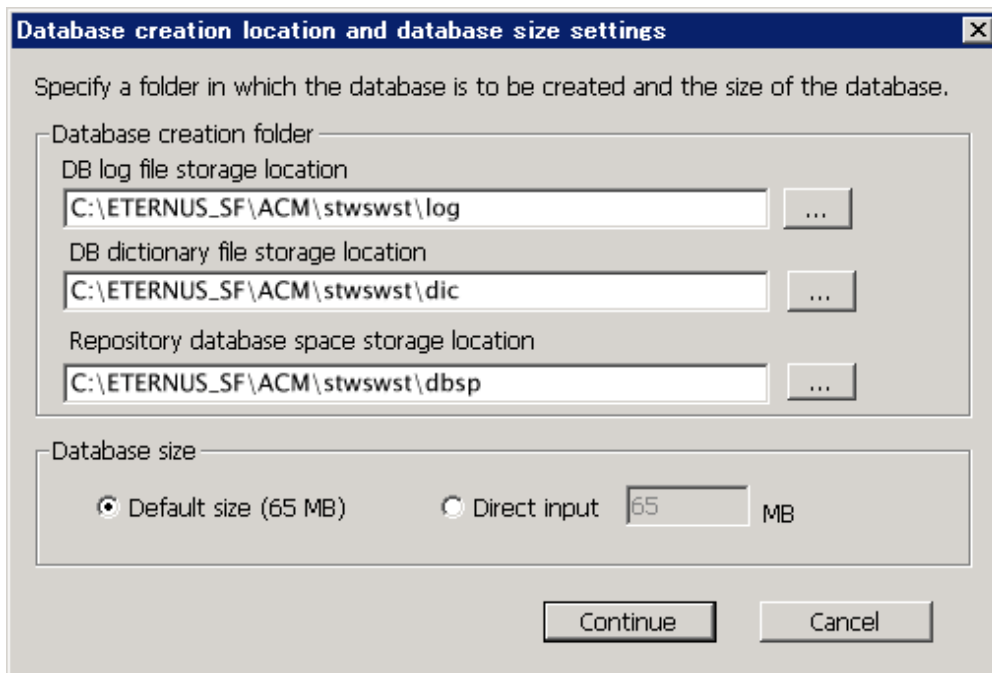
14. Once the previous version uninstallation is completed, the copy of the new program version is started.

During the process, the file copy completion status is displayed in the [Setup Status] screen.

15. Once the copy process ends, the system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



16. Enter the requested information for the repository database creation in the following screen. After the input, click the [Continue] button.



Database creation folder

This is the folder where the database will be created.

Enter the path, including the drive name, for each of the following database directories. The specified folders must be new NTFS folders. If a folder specified is not a NTFS folder or if it already exists, choose another name.

The default of the folders to store the repository database is displayed in each field. Change if necessary.

- DB log file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB log file.
- DB dictionary file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB dictionary file.
- Repository database space storage location
Specify the folder for storing the repository database space.

Note

- Do not specify the shared folder as the folder where the database will be created.
- The number of characters in a folder name must be between 4 and 80. The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ; # ' @] cannot be used in folder names.
- Do not check the option [Compress drive to save disk space] in the **General** tab for any of these drives. Overhead is greater to a compressed drive than a non compressed drive. Depending on the amount of I/O, access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions.

- Do not check the [Compress or Encrypt Attributes] in the [Advanced Attributes] section of the [Properties] or [Advanced] part of the **General** tab.
Overhead is greater to a compressed and/or encrypted drive. Access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions.
If the encryption property is checked, access errors may occur when decryption cannot be performed.

Database size

The database size is entered in MB. The size to enter is the result of the calculation performed before installation as described in "5.1.1.5 Database size estimation". To use the default value, check the [Default size (65 MB)] box.

- The following screen is displayed for the IP address and the database user settings.
Once the input is finished, click the [Settings] button.

The default value is displayed in the screen. Change if necessary.

IP address

Enter the IP address of the Management Server (own system).

If the previous version level of AdvancedCopy Manager has been installed, specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous production.

Note

When the Management Server has two or more IP addresses, specify the IP address which is available for communicating with the Management Server from all of the AdvancedCopy Manager's agents.

Repository access user

Enter username and password for the database access user.

The usernames entered here must have local login or domain login permissions at the OS level.

For the default username and password, refer to "Installation procedure" in the "Software Release Guide".

However, use other than default value because of security reasons.

The following conditions apply for the usernames and passwords:

- Username and password must be compatible with the underlying operating system.
- Username and password must be no longer than 18 characters (bytes).

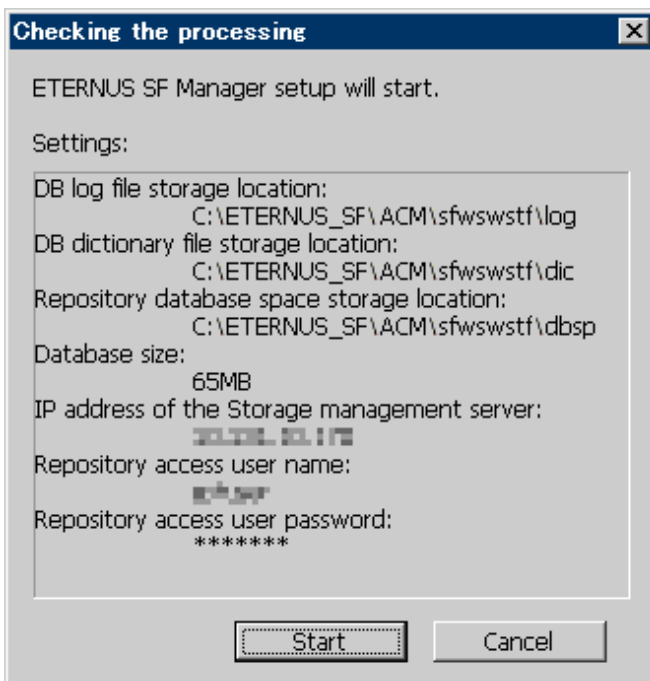


- If the user name specified here is not yet registered to the system, perform the registration, and add either local login or domain login privileges. Refer to the table below and specify a user that corresponds to the server type being used.

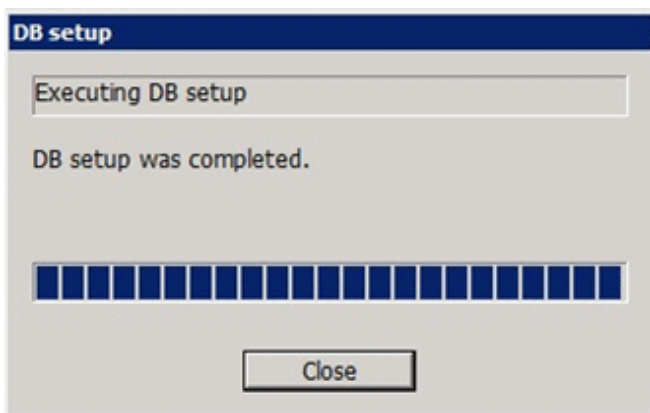
Server type	User to be specified
Domain Controller	Domain user
Machine that belongs to the domain	Local user
WORKGROUP (not belong to the domain)	

- When specifying a user name that is already registered to the system, use identical characters (e.g. uppercase and lowercase letters) to the registered user name.

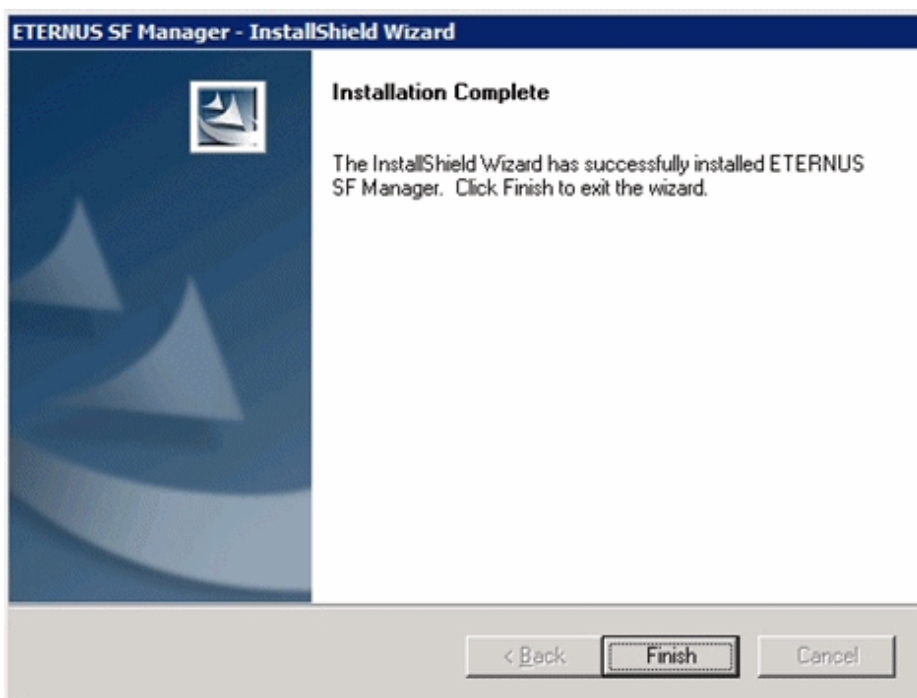
18. The following screen is displayed. Check the contents and click the [Start] button.



19. The database setup process starts. When the process is finished, the following screen is displayed. Click the [Close] button.



20. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



21. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Windows versions of Storage Cruiser's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

5.1.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The installation destination directories (/opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm, etc) cannot be modified.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

The following ports are used:

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Web Console service	esfmanagerweb	9855/tcp	ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service
communication service 1	stgxfws	1226/tcp	Communications_service_1
communication service 2	sscruisera	4917/tcp	Communications_service_2
Repository service 1	rdaswstf	32004/tcp	Repository_service_1

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Repository service 2	esfpostgres	15432/tcp	Repository_service_2
Remote access service	rmiswstf	9851/tcp	Remote_access_service
Exclusive control service	semswstf	9852/tcp	Exclusive_control_service
Internal use	esfmanagertomcat1	28005/tcp	Internal_port_1
	esfmanagertomcat2	28009/tcp	Internal_port_2
	esfmanagertomcat3	28443/tcp	Internal_port_3
	sscruiserm	24916/tcp	Internal_port_4
	astm	24917/tcp	Internal_port_5

- Custom installation

Modify the installation information (port number for the communications service, character code, and so on) for the Upgrade Installation.

Define the installation information to the install parameter file. Specify the install parameter file to which the installation information has been defined when executing the install shell.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.1 Install parameter file \(for ETERNUS SF Manager\)](#)".

 Note

- You cannot change the install directory such as /opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm.
- Make sure to perform the followings when the previous version level of AdvancedCopy Manager has been installed and the Management Server has two or more IP addresses.
 - Perform the custom installation.
 - Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous version for the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address".

 Point

If an IP address for the Management Server is not specified in the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address", the IP address for the Management Server is set automatically during the installation. After the installation is completed, change the IP address if required. For the information on how to change an IP address, refer to "Changing the IP address of Management Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the operating system of the Management Server.

 Note

When Symfoware is already installed, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV temporarily.
2. Perform the Upgrade Installation.
3. Start the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.

2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Execute the installation shell script.

Example of a default installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh
```

Example of a custom installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s <Install parameter file>
```

Specify the absolute path name of the install parameter file edited in advance for <Install parameter file>.

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                                     |
|               ETERNUS SF V15.1     |
|                                     |
| All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012 |
|                                     |
+-----+

Setting of installation parameter file.

Installation_function:      ETERNUS SF Manager

Character_code:             UTF8

Port number
  ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service: 9855
  Communications_service_1:          1226
  Communications_service_2:          4917
  Repository_service_1:              32004
  Repository_service_2:              15432
  Remote_access_service:             9851
  Exclusive_control_service:         9852
  Internal_port_1:                   28005
  Internal_port_2:                   28009
  Internal_port_3:                   28443
  Internal_port_4:                   24916
  Internal_port_5:                   24917

Repository database setup
  DB_file_directory:                /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
  RDB_dictionary_directory:         /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
  RDB_log_file_directory:           /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
  Repository_DB_space_directory:    /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
  Repository_data_size:              65
  Management_server_IP_address:
  AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH: 32bit
```

```
esfpostgres_UID:
Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:
```

- 7. The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```
An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:
```

 **Point**

.....
For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation. When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
.....

- 8. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.
```

- 9. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```
# cd
```

- 10. Unmount the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

- 11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of Storage Cruiser's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

5.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

Once the Storage Cruiser's manager Upgrade Installation has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

5.1.4.1 Restoration from previous version

Refer to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" to restore the operational environment backed up in "5.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

- For Windows environment:

- 1. Execute the following batch file to stop the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

```
<Install directory>\Common\bin\Stop_ESFservice.bat
```

- 2. Perform Steps 5 to 11 in "Restoring Windows Manager". In Step 5, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".

- Execute the following batch file to restart the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

```
<Install directory>\Common\bin\Start_ESFservice.bat
```

- For Solaris, Linux environment:

- Execute the following shell script to stop the daemon of ETERNUS SF Manager.

An error occurs if you execute the following shell script before the startup process of the ETERNUS SF Manager daemon, which is started automatically by the installation process, is completed. If an error occurs, wait for a minute and try again.

```
/opt/FJSSVesfcm/bin/stopesf.sh
```

- Perform Steps 5 to 11 in "Restoring Solaris OS Manager". In Step 5, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".

- Execute the following shell script to restart the daemon of ETERNUS SF Manager.

```
/opt/FJSSVesfcm/bin/startesf.sh
```

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "[5.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



Note

For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Windows	A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Windows	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows) A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "[5.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "[A.14 Restore of the environment setting files](#)".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, restore the definition of the license information.

Restore the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm restore command. For details of esflm restore command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Example of executing esflm restore command is as below. The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
> esflm restore <file_name>
Restoration of license database was performed successfully
```

5.1.4.2 Import of the Configuration information

Import the Configuration information from the previous version by executing the configuration information import command (esfimportdevconf) with administrator permissions.

Check that the targeted devices can be accessed before executing the configuration information import command.

- For Windows environment (DOS prompt):

```
<Program directory>\Common\bin\esfimportdevconf
```

- For Solaris, Linux environment:

```
# /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdevconf
```

After executing the configuration information import command, confirm that the "Complete" is displayed in the [IMPORT STATUS] column in the configuration import status display command (esfimportdisplay) of the configuration information import.



See

.....
Refer to "10.2 Command reference" for details about the each import command.
.....

5.1.4.3 Setting up user account

Set up a user account in order to use the ETERNUS SF Manager functions.



See

.....
For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up user account" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

5.1.4.4 Setting up for using Web Console

If you set up firewalls between the PC on which the Web Console is launched and the Management Server, make settings so as to allow transmission to pass the firewalls.



See

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up for using Web Console" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5.1.4.5 Set account information that can access to ETERNUS Disk storage system

Set the account information, user name and password, that can access to the ETERNUS Disk storage system.



See

For details on how to set up, refer to "Set and change the information of the account that can access ETERNUS Disk storage system" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

5.1.4.6 License registration

Register the appropriate licenses.



See

For settings, refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

5.1.4.7 Redefinition of the missing information

- iSCSI HBA information

If iSCSI was defined before the upgrade, redefine it with the following procedure:

1. Log into the Web Console.
2. Select the server featuring the iSCSI HBA, click [Add HBA] in the Action pane and enter the HBA information.

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure.



See

For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
```

```
-----  
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90  
Disk Array Name : DX90  
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511##  
IP Address : 10.124.6.251  
Admin User : ****  
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90  
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -  
path X:  
Successful completion.
```

Point

.....
When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.
.....

5. Reload the Configuration information

See

.....
For reloading the configuration information, refer to "Reload ETERNUS Disk storage system configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.
.....

5.1.4.8 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the stguserset (Repository access user change command).

See

.....
For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.
.....

5.1.5 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation of Storage Cruiser's manager is completed. Restart the operation.

However, when you change the SELinux setting to "enforcing" simultaneously with the migration in the Linux environment, refer to the following manual for this version level and restart the operation after the installation of SELinux policy module for snmptrapd.

- "SNMP Trap setting (for Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide"

5.2 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent

The following shows the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's agent.

1. Back up the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information of the previous version.

- For Windows environment:

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
1	SNMP Trap sending destination address	\$OLD_TMP_DIR\Agent\var\sanm.ip (\$OLD_TMP_DIR is "Work Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)
2	Agent definition file	All files under \$OLD_ENV_DIR\Agent\etc directory (\$OLD_ENV_DIR is "Environment Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)
3	User definition information	\$OLD_INS_DIR\Agent\lib\defusr.dat (\$OLD_INS_DIR is "Program Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.) Note: If there is no file, backup is not required.

- For Solaris, Linux and HP-UX environments:

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
1	SNMP Trap sending destination address	/var/opt/FJSVssage/sanm.ip
2	Agent definition file	All files under the /etc/opt/FJSVssage directory
3	User definition information	/opt/FJSVssage/lib/defusr.dat Note: If there is no file, backup is not required.

2. Uninstall the previous version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to uninstall, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Installation Guide" for the relevant previous version.

3. Install this version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to install, refer to "Installation of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

4. Set up the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setup of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5. Restore the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information backed up in step 1.

- For Windows environment:

- Copy the file of No. 1 and create \$TMP_DIR\Agent\var\sanm.ip.
(\$TMP_DIR is "Work Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

- Refer to each file of No. 2 and reflect the definitions which have been changed from the installation of the previous version of Storage Cruiser's agent to the \$ENV_DIR\Agent\etc directory.
(\$ENV_DIR is "Environment Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

Migration is not required for files whose definitions have not been changed. Use the new definition files.

- Copy the file of No. 3 and create \$INS_DIR\Agent\lib\defusr.dat.
(\$INS_DIR is "Program Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

This work is not required if the file was not backed up in step 1.

- For Solaris, Linux and HP-UX environments:

- Copy the file of No. 1 and create /var/opt/FJSVssage/sanm.ip.

- Refer to each file of No. 2 and reflect the definitions which have been changed from the installation of the previous version of Storage Cruiser's agent to the /etc/opt/FJSVssage directory.

Migration is not required for files whose definitions have not been changed. Use the new definition files.

- Copy the file of No. 3 and create /opt/FJSVssage/lib/defusr.dat.

This work is not required if the file was not backed up in step 1.

6. Reload server information using Web Console.



See

.....
For details of reloading server information, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.
.....

Chapter 6 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser Version 15.x.

To upgrade to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

Point

- If upgrading Storage Cruiser, make sure that the Storage Cruiser's manager version level is the same or higher than the Storage Cruiser's agent version level.
- If Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are both installed on the same server, when upgrading one, both of Storage Cruiser and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module get upgraded. Therefore it is necessary to perform backups of the previous versions before starting the upgrade procedure.

6.1 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager (for Windows)

This section describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's manager for Windows.

Note

In the Windows Server 2003 environment, using the procedure mentioned below cannot perform the Upgrade Installation process. When upgrading versions in the Windows Server 2003 environment, take the following procedure:

1. Uninstall the before version product.
2. If Symfoware Server included in AdvancedCopy Manager is being used, take the following step:
Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.
3. Install this version level of product.

6.1.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of non-cluster operation:

6.1.1.1 Before installation (for Windows)

In the case of non-cluster operation, the following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for Storage Cruiser's manager for Windows:

1. Check the Symfoware.

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.

See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

2. Stop the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Stop_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

3. If the ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option is in use, stop the Optimization option.
On the Windows Service screen, stop the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option".
4. Backup the Windows system.



.....
If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, backup the Windows system before performing the Upgrade Installation process.

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.
.....

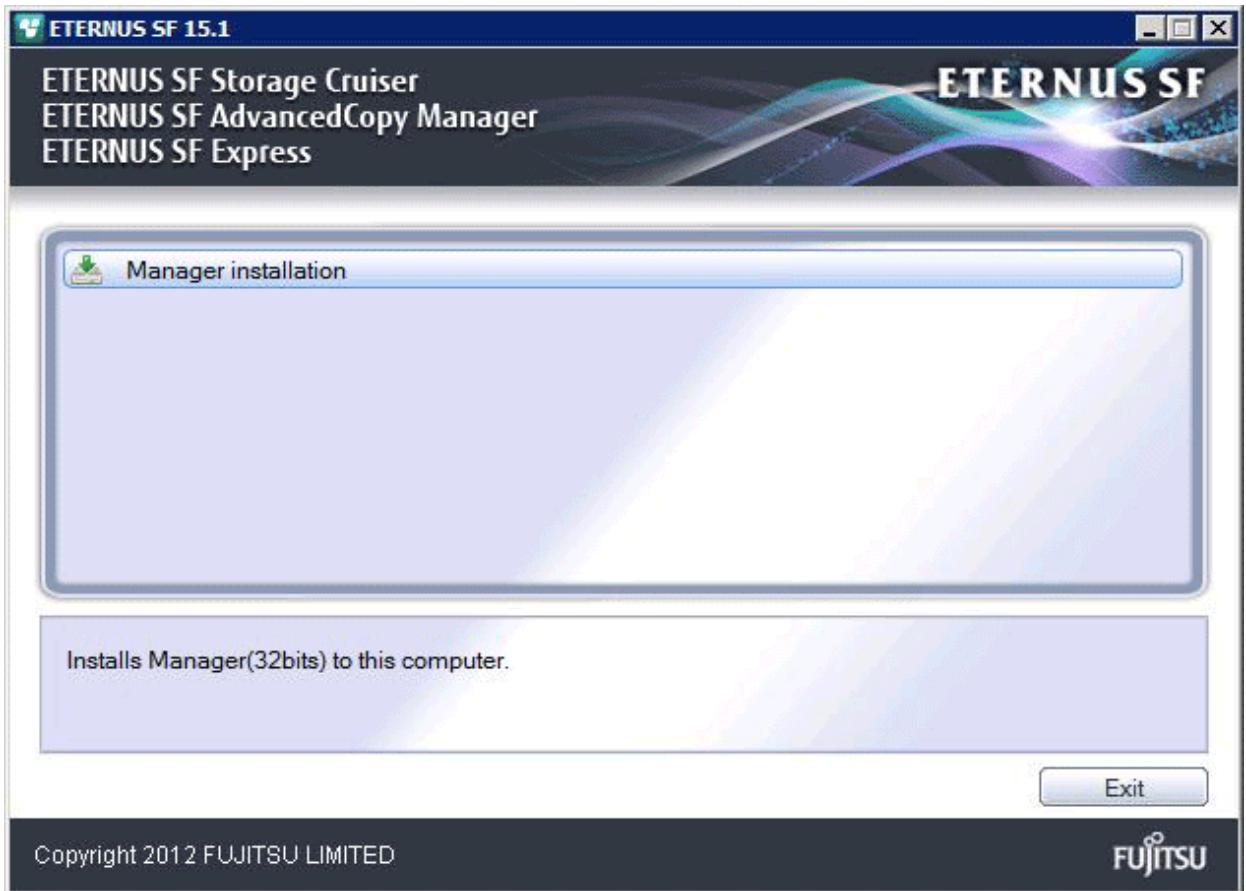
6.1.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

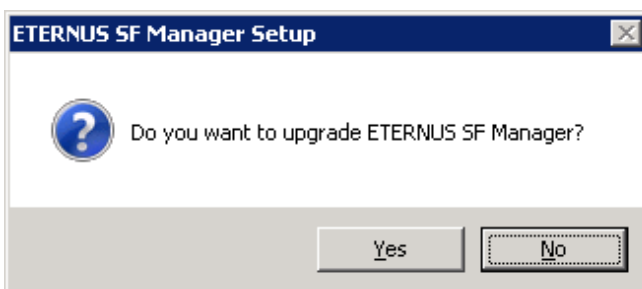
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

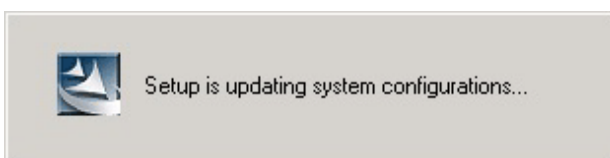
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



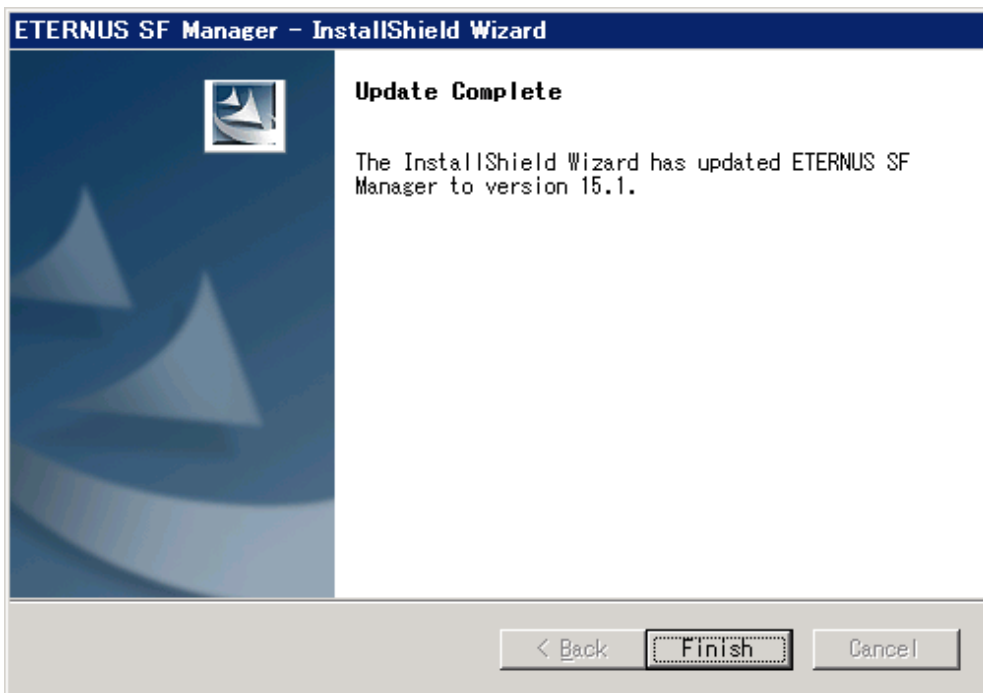
4. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



5. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



6. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



7. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

6.1.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows)

After the Upgrade Installation process for Storage Cruiser's manager for Windows, perform the following procedure.

1. Edit the configuration file.

If the following SNMP Trap XML definition file has been customized, it is required to re-customize the definition file to use the new features of Storage Cruiser.

- 1_3_6_1_4_1_789.xml

Customized the above newly installed definition file.



For customization of the SNMP Trap XML definition file, refer to the "SNMP Trap XML Definition File" section in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

2. Start the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Start_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

3. When using the ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option, start the Optimization option.

On the Windows Service screen, start the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option".

4. Reset the password for repository access user.

Use stguserset (Repository access user change command) to reset the password for repository access user.

 **Point**

.....
Even if the password is not changed, be sure to reset the password.
.....

 **See**

.....
For details about the procedure, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.
.....

5. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

 **Note**

.....
For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.
.....

 **See**

.....
For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.
.....

6.1.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of cluster operation:

The following values are used in the description:

Directory name	Explanation
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.
\$ETC_DIR	"Environment Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

6.1.2.1 Before installation

In the case of cluster operation, the following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for Storage Cruiser's manager for Windows:

1. Check the Symfoware

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.

 **See**

.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

2. Check that the ETERNUS SF Manager services are stopped on the secondary node.
If the services are not stopped, use Failover Cluster Manager on the secondary node to stop the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.
3. On the primary node, stop the ETERNUS SF Manager services.
Use Failover Cluster Manager to stop the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.
However, place online the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data.
4. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, take the following procedure:
 1. On the secondary node for a target transaction, check that the Managed Server transactions are stopped.
If Managed Server transactions have not stopped, use the Failover Cluster Manager to stop Managed Server transactions on the secondary node.
If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure on each secondary node for Managed Server transactions.
 2. On the primary node for a target transaction, stop the Managed Server transaction.
Use the Failover Cluster Manager to stop Managed Server transactions.
However, the Shared disk for shared data for Managed Server transactions must be online.
If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure on each primary node for Managed Server transaction.
5. Stop the local transactions on all the nodes.
Execute the following procedure:
 1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
 2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Stop] button.
6. Backup the environment and data.
 - On the primary and secondary nodes, backup the Windows system.
 - On the primary node, backup the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data.
 - If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, backup the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions on each primary node for target transaction.

Point

.....

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, be sure to back up the following before the Upgrade Installation process.

- Windows system
- Shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data
- Shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

.....

6.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)

The following shows the upgrade procedure in the primary node.

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Save the environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

```
Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : %INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties
```

Copy it to any directory other than the installation destination directory for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

The saved file is used for post-Upgrade Installation process.

- Restore the original environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

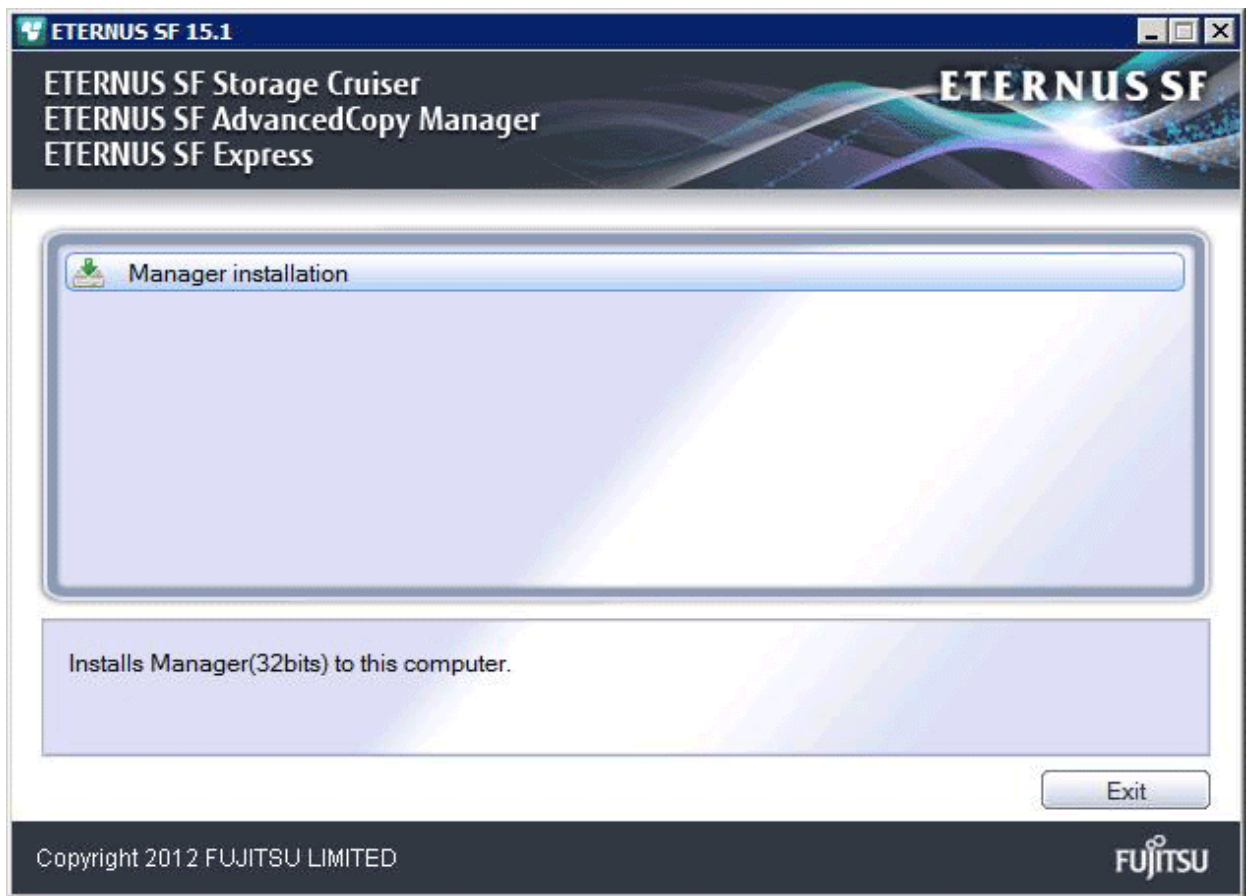
Write the original environment setting file over the copy destination file.

Original environment setting file	Copy destination file
\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\sys\sys.properties	\$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

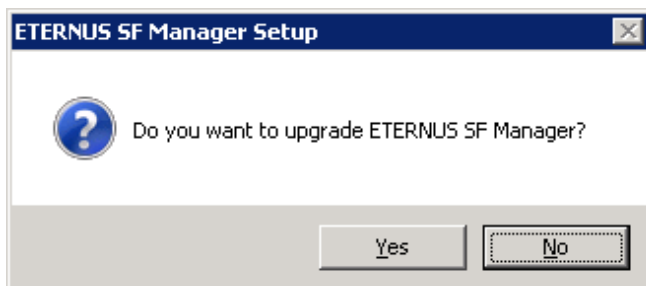
- Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

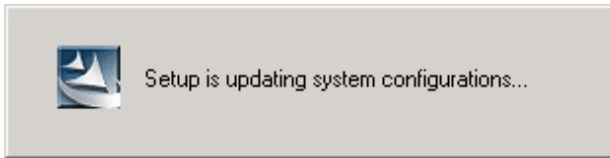
- The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



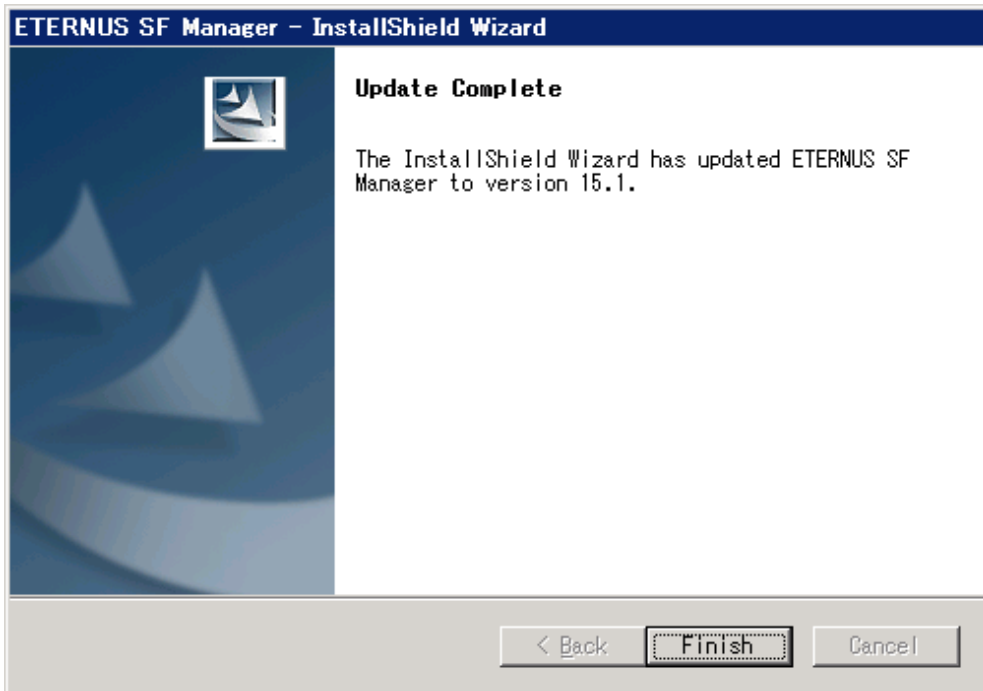
- The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



7. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



8. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



9. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

6.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process on the primary node, perform the following procedure.

1. Restore the environment setting file (sys.properties) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Write the environment setting file (sys.properties) saved in Step 2 of "6.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)" over the following file after the Upgrade Installation process:

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

2. Edit the environment setting file (.install.sys) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys

Change the stxs_etcdir information within the file to post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the stxs_etcdir information	Post-replacement the stxs_etcdir information
stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgrading directory</i>	stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgraded directory (Note)</i>

Note: Specify the value of stxs_etcdir set to the following file for the *upgraded directory*.

\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys

Note

- Do not change anything other than the stxs_etcdirc line in the \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\install.sys file.
- For the \$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\install.sys file, refer to it only, but do not edit it.

3. Edit the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager on the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data.

Edit the following files:

- <Drive letter of shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\clsetup.ini
- <Drive letter of shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\swstg.ini

Change the Version information within each file to the post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the Version information	Post-replacement the Version information
Version=V15.0	Version=V15.1

Note

Do not change anything other than the Version line.

4. If Managed Server services coexist in the cluster system, edit the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager on the shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data, on the primary node for a target service.

On the primary node for target transactions, edit the following files:

- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\clsetup.ini
- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\swstg.ini

Change the Version information within each file to the post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the Version information	Post-replacement the Version information
Version=V15.0	Version=V15.1

Note

Do not change anything other than the Version line.

5. If the SNMP Trap XML definition file has been customized, re-customize the definition file to use the new features of Storage Cruiser.

Customized the newly installed definition file below.

- 1_3_6_1_4_1_789.xml

See

For customization of the SNMP Trap XML definition file, refer to the "SNMP Trap XML Definition File" section in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

6.1.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node)

On the secondary node, perform the Upgrade Installation process.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is the same as that on the primary node. Refer to "[6.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation \(Primary Node\)](#)".

6.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process on the secondary node, perform the following procedure.

1. Restore the environment setting file (sys.properties) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Write the environment setting file (sys.properties) saved in Step 2 of "6.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)" over the following file after the Upgrade Installation process:

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

2. Edit the environment setting file (.install.sys) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Environment setting file AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys

Change the stxs_etcdir information within the file to post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the stxs_etcdir information	Post-replacement the stxs_etcdir information
stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgrading directory</i>	stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgraded directory</i> (Note)

Note: Specify the value of stxs_etcdir set to the following file for the *upgraded directory*.

\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys



- Do not change anything other than the stxs_etcdir line in the \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys file.
- For the \$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys file, refer to it only, but do not edit it.

6.1.2.6 Start ETERNUS SF Manager

After "6.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)" and "6.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)", perform the following procedure.

1. Start ETERNUS SF Manager services in the primary node.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to start the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.

2. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, start the Managed Server transactions in the primary node for a target transaction.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to start the Managed Server transactions.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.

3. Start the local transactions on all the nodes.

Perform the following procedure.

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Start] button.

4. Reset the password for repository access user in the primary node.

Use stguserst (Repository access user change command) to reset the password for repository access user.



Even if the password is not changed, be sure to reset the password.



See

For details about the procedure, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

5. Change the server information in the primary node.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).



Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

6. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Managed Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

This operation should be done in the primary node for Management Server transactions.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.



Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

6.2 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's manager (for Solaris, Linux)

This section describes the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's manager for Solaris and Linux.

6.2.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux)

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for Storage Cruiser's manager for Solaris and Linux.

6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Backup the operational environment of Storage Cruiser's manager for Solaris and Linux, for the previous version level using the following procedure.

1. Stop the Storage Cruiser's manager.

Execute the following command.

```
# /opt/FJSVssmgr/sbin/managerctl stop
```



For details about stopping the Storage Cruiser's manager, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" for the relevant previous version.

2. Backup the operational environment of Storage Cruiser's manager for the previous version level, referring to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" for this version.

Perform Steps 4 to 10 in "Backup of Solaris OS Manager". In Step 4, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".

3. If the Optimization option is in use, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the Optimization option.

Execute the following command to stop the Optimization option daemon.

```
# /opt/FJSVssast/bin/astctl stop
```

2. Refer to the following section in this version level of "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" to back up the earlier version level of Optimization option environment.

Step 13 in "Backup of Solaris OS Manager"

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.



Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)2. A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for the previous version level.



For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

Backup of common control repository

Backup the common control repository.



See

For details about the backup method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- ["A.16 Backup of common control repository \(for Solaris, Linux\)"](#).

Backup of license management database

Backup the license management database,



See

For details about the backup method of the license management database, refer to the following section:

- ["A.18 Backup of license management database \(for Solaris, Linux\)"](#).

6.2.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed. The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version.

6.2.1.3 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

6.2.1.4 Database size estimation

A database is necessary for this version of Storage Cruiser. The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details about how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

6.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

If AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Stop daemon.

Execute the following command to stop the daemon of AdvancedCopy Manager on the Management Server.

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stopacm
```

2. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- ["A.8 Cancel of repository settings"](#)

In the case of cluster operation

Under cluster operation, the user must execute cluster unsetup before uninstallation.



See

For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Deletion of Cluster Environment for Management Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version level.

6.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The installation destination directories (/opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm, etc) cannot be modified.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

The following ports are used:

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Web Console service	esfmanagerweb	9855/tcp	ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service
communication service 1	stgxfws	1226/tcp	Communications_service_1
communication service 2	sscruisera	4917/tcp	Communications_service_2
Repository service 1	rdaswstf	32004/tcp	Repository_service_1
Repository service 2	esfpostgres	15432/tcp	Repository_service_2
Remote access service	rmiswstf	9851/tcp	Remote_access_service

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Exclusive control service	semswstf	9852/tcp	Exclusive_control_service
Internal use	esfmanagertomcat1	28005/tcp	Internal_port_1
	esfmanagertomcat2	28009/tcp	Internal_port_2
	esfmanagertomcat3	28443/tcp	Internal_port_3
	sscruiserm	24916/tcp	Internal_port_4
	astm	24917/tcp	Internal_port_5

- Custom installation

Modify the installation information (port number for the communications service, character code, and so on) for the Upgrade Installation.

Define the installation information to the install parameter file. Specify the install parameter file to which the installation information has been defined when executing the install shell.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.1 Install parameter file \(for ETERNUS SF Manager\)](#)".

 Note

- You cannot change the install directory such as /opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm.
- Make sure to perform the followings when the previous version level of AdvancedCopy Manager has been installed and the Management Server has two or more IP addresses.
 - Perform the custom installation.
 - Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous version for the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address".

 Point

If an IP address for the Management Server is not specified in the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address", the IP address for the Management Server is set automatically during the installation. After the installation is completed, change the IP address if required. For the information on how to change an IP address, refer to "Changing the IP address of Management Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the operating system of the Management Server.

 Note

When Symfoware is already installed, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV temporarily.
2. Perform the Upgrade Installation.
3. Start the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.

2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Execute the installation shell script.

Example of a default installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh
```

Example of a custom installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s <Install parameter file>
```

Specify the absolute path name of the install parameter file edited in advance for <Install parameter file>.

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                                     |
|           ETERNUS SF V15.1         |
|                                     |
| All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012 |
|                                     |
+-----+

Setting of installation parameter file.

Installation_function:      ETERNUS SF Manager

Character_code:             UTF8

Port number
  ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service: 9855
  Communications_service_1:          1226
  Communications_service_2:          4917
  Repository_service_1:              32004
  Repository_service_2:              15432
  Remote_access_service:             9851
  Exclusive_control_service:         9852
  Internal_port_1:                   28005
  Internal_port_2:                   28009
  Internal_port_3:                   28443
  Internal_port_4:                   24916
  Internal_port_5:                   24917

Repository database setup
  DB_file_directory:                /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
  RDB_dictionary_directory:         /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
  RDB_log_file_directory:           /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
  Repository_DB_space_directory:    /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
  Repository_data_size:              65
  Management_server_IP_address:
  AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH: 32bit
```

```
esfpostgres_UID:
Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:
```

- 7. The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```
An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:
```

 **Point**

.....
For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation. When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
.....

- 8. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.
```

- 9. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```
# cd
```

- 10. Unmount the DVD-ROM.
Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

- 11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of Storage Cruiser's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "6.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Solaris, Linux)" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "6.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Solaris, Linux)" afterwards.

6.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Solaris, Linux)

Once the Storage Cruiser's manager Upgrade Installation has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

6.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version

Refer to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide" to restore the operational environment backed up in "6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

- 1. Execute the following shell script to stop the daemon of ETERNUS SF Manager.
An error occurs if you execute the following shell script before the startup process of the ETERNUS SF Manager daemon, which is started automatically by the installation process, is completed. If an error occurs, wait for a minute and try again.

```
# /opt/FJSSvesfcm/bin/stopesf.sh
```

- 2. Perform Step 5 to 11 in "Restoring Solaris OS Manager". In Step 5, perform the "Upgrade from a previous version".

3. Execute the following shell script to restart the daemon of ETERNUS SF Manager.

```
# /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/startesf.sh
```

4. If the Optimization option is in use, perform the following procedure:

1. Execute the following command to stop the Optimization option daemon.

```
# /opt/FJSVssast/bin/astctl stop
```

2. Perform Step 14 in "Restoring Solaris OS Manager"

3. Execute the following command to restart the Optimization option daemon.

```
# /opt/FJSVssast/bin/astctl start
```

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "[6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



Note

For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Solaris Linux	A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: 1. A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) 2. A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, restore the operational environment backed up in "[6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "[A.14 Restore of the environment setting files](#)".

Restoration of license management database

Restore the license management database backed up in "[6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



See

For details about the restoration method of license management database, refer to the following section:

- "A.22 Restore of license management database (for Solaris, Linux)".

Restoration of the common control repository

Restore the common control repository backed up in "6.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details about the restoration method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- "A.20 Restore of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux)".

6.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure. (Command is an example for Windows)



See

For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
-----
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B###LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90
Disk Array Name : DX90
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B###LH4311015511##
IP Address : 10.124.6.251
Admin User : ****
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -
path X:
Successful completion.
```

Point

When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

5. Reload the Configuration information.

See

For reloading the configuration information, refer to "Reload ETERNUS Disk storage system configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

6.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the stguserset (Repository access user change command).

See

For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.

6.2.4 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation of Storage Cruiser's manager is complete. Restart the operation.

However, when you change the SELinux setting to "enforcing" simultaneously with the migration in the Linux environment, refer to the following manual for this version level and restart the operation after the installation of SELinux policy module for snmptd.

- "SNMP Trap setting (for Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide"

6.3 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent (for Windows)

This section describes the Upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's agent for Windows.

Note

The Upgrade procedure is different between Windows Server 2003 environment and Windows Server 2008 environment.

For Windows Server 2008

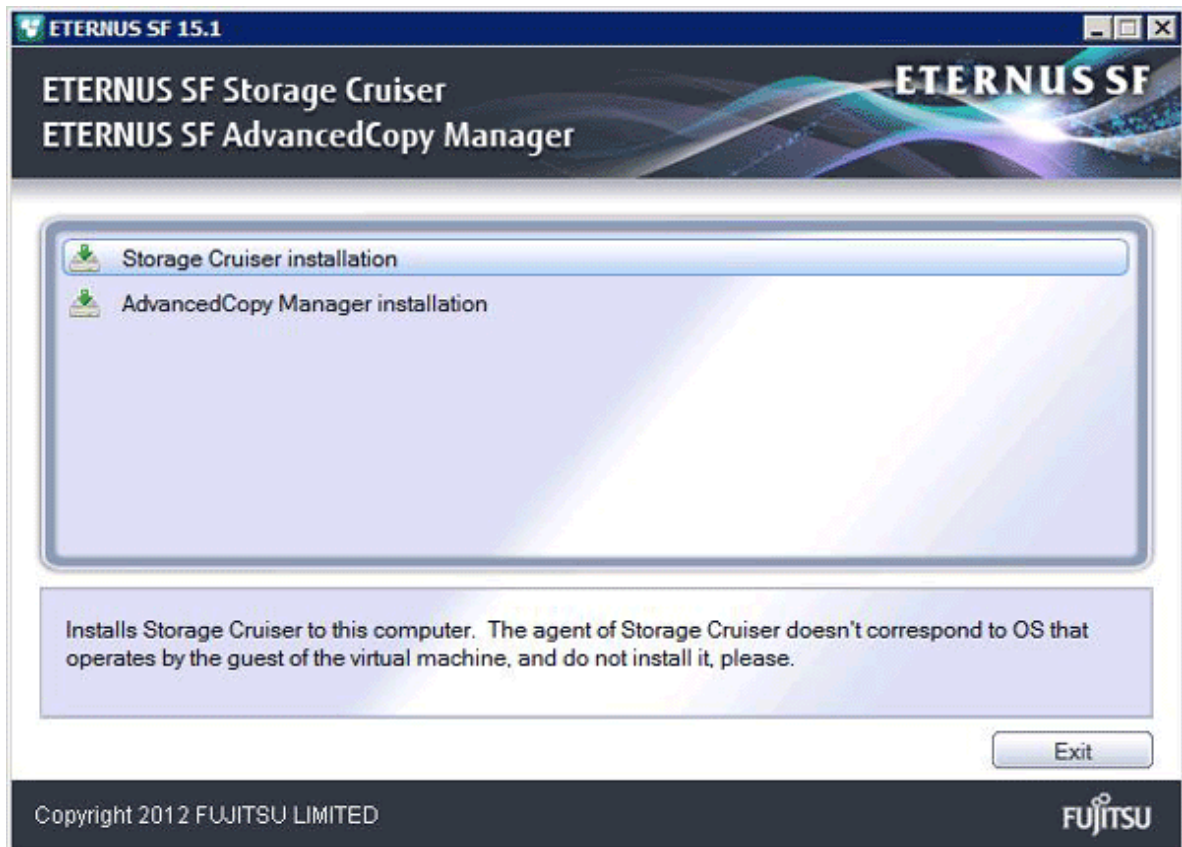
The following shows the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's agent.

1. Back up the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information of the previous version.

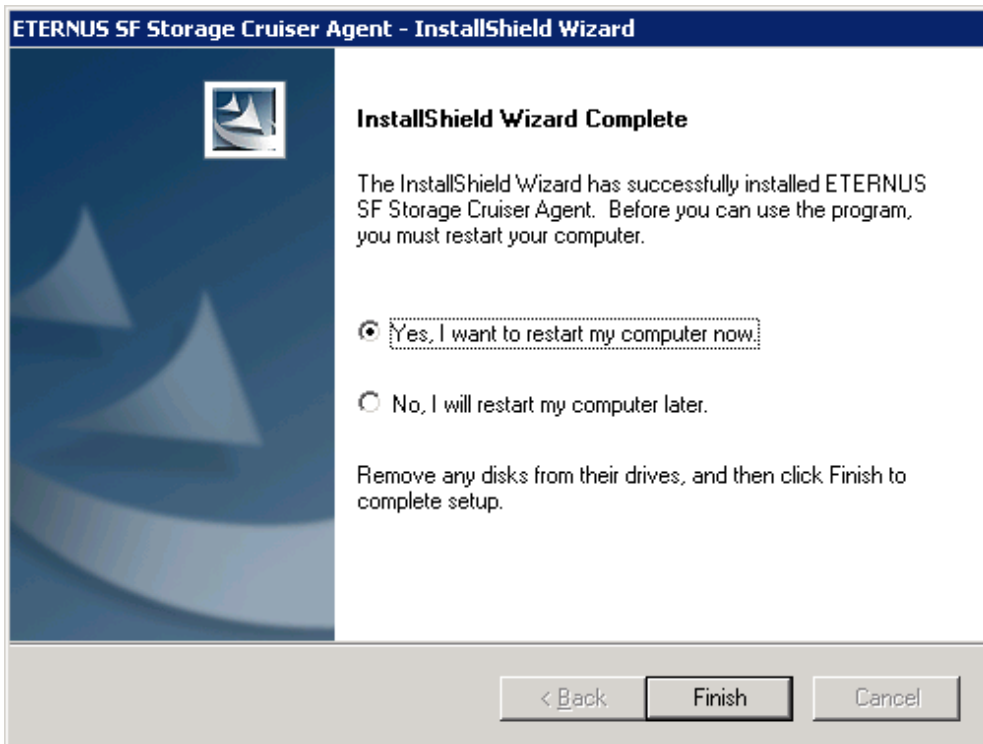
If customization is not performed on "Correlation.ini Parameter" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide", backup is not required.

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
1	Agent definition file	\$ENV_DIR\Agent\etc\Correlation.ini (\$ENV_DIR is "Environment Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

- Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
- Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.
- The following screen is displayed. Click the [Storage Cruiser installation] button.



- Once the upgrade processing ends, the following screen is displayed. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive, and then click the [Finish] button.



- Reload server information using Web Console.



For details of reloading server information, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

- If the Storage Cruiser's agent configuration information is saved in Step 1, restore the configuration information.

Refer to the file of No. 1 and reflect the definitions which have been changed from the installation of the previous version of Storage Cruiser's agent to the \$ENV_DIR\Agent\etc\Correlation.ini file.



For details of customization Correlation.ini parameters, refer to "Correlation.ini Parameter" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide".

For Windows Server 2003

The following shows the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's agent.

- Back up the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information of the previous version.

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
1	SNMP Trap sending destination address	\$OLD_TMP_DIR\Agent\var\snm.ip (\$OLD_TMP_DIR is "Work Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
2	Agent definition file	All files under \$OLD_ENV_DIR\Agent\etc directory (\$OLD_ENV_DIR is "Environment Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)
3	User definition information	\$OLD_INS_DIR\Agent\lib\defusr.dat (\$OLD_INS_DIR is "Program Directory" specified at the previous Storage Cruiser's agent installation.) Note: If there is no file, backup is not required.

2. Uninstall the previous version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to uninstall, refer to "Uninstallation of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version.

3. Install this version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to install, refer to "Installation of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

4. Set up the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setup of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5. Restore the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information backed up in step 1.

- Copy the file of No. 1 and create \$TMP_DIR\Agent\var\sanm.ip.
(\$TMP_DIR is "Work Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)
- Refer to each file of No. 2 and reflect the definitions which have been changed from the installation of the previous version of Storage Cruiser's agent to the \$ENV_DIR\Agent\etc directory.
(\$ENV_DIR is "Environment Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

Migration is not required for files whose definitions have not been changed. Use the new definition files.

- Copy the file of No. 3 and create \$INS_DIR\Agent\lib\defusr.dat.
(\$INS_DIR is "Program Directory" specified at the Storage Cruiser's agent installation.)

This work is not required if the file was not backed up in step 1.

6. Reload server information using Web Console.



For details of reloading server information, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

6.4 Upgrade for Storage Cruiser's agent (for Solaris, Linux, HP-UX)

The following shows the upgrade procedure for Storage Cruiser's agent.

1. Back up the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information of the previous version.

No.	Settings information to be backed up	File to be backed up
1	SNMP Trap sending destination address	/var/opt/FJSVssage/sanm.ip
2	Agent definition file	All files under the /etc/opt/FJSVssage directory
3	User definition information	/opt/FJSVssage/lib/defusr.dat Note: If there is no file, backup is not required.

2. Uninstall the previous version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to uninstall, refer to "Uninstallation of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version.

3. Install this version of the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to install, refer to "Installation of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

4. Set up the Storage Cruiser's agent.

For details on how to set up, refer to "Setup of Storage Cruiser's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

5. Restore the Storage Cruiser's agent settings information backed up in step 1.

- Copy the file of No. 1 and create /var/opt/FJSVssage/sanm.ip.
- Refer to each file of No. 2 and reflect the definitions which have been changed from the installation of the previous version of Storage Cruiser's agent to the /etc/opt/FJSVssage directory.

Migration is not required for files whose definitions have not been changed. Use the new definition files.

- Copy the file of No. 3 and create /opt/FJSVssage/lib/defusr.dat.

This work is not required if the file was not backed up in step 1.

6. Reload server information using Web Console.



For details of reloading server information, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.

Chapter 7 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x/14.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager for Version 13.x and 14.x.

If performing an upgrade to a system environment using Agent-based operation model, perform the upgrade in the following sequence.

1. AdvancedCopy Manager's manager
2. AdvancedCopy Manager's agent

Point

- With AdvancedCopy Manager programs, the Upgrade Installation can be performed for the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

The AdvancedCopy Manager's agent cannot be upgraded by using the Upgrade Installation.

For upgrading the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent, as with previous versions, it is necessary to uninstall the previous version of the program and then install this version of the program.

For details, refer to "[7.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent](#)".

- If upgrading AdvancedCopy Manager, make sure that the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager version level is the same or higher than the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent version level.
- When upgrading AdvancedCopy Manager, the following information cannot be imported:
 - Account for using the GUI client
- If AdvancedCopy Manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are both installed on the same server, when upgrading one, both of AdvancedCopy Manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module will be upgraded. Therefore it is necessary to perform backups of the previous versions before starting the upgrade procedure.

7.1 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager

This section describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager.

To upgrade to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

7.1.1 Before installation

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager.

7.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Back up the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for the previous version level.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.

Note

The following information cannot be continuously used.

- Account for using the GUI client



Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Storage Management Server	Windows	A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Storage Management Server which also serves as a Storage Server	Windows	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none">A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none">A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.



For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, backup the definition of the license information.

Backup the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm backup command. For details of esflm backup command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version level.

Example of executing esflm backup command is as below. The file specified with *<file_name>* will be created as a backup file.

```
> esflm backup <file_name>
Backup of license database was performed successfully
```

7.1.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to the relevant "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version.

7.1.1.3 Incompatible software uninstallation

Check if any incompatible software for this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program is installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

If the incompatible software is found, refer to that software manual and uninstall it before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

.....
For details on the incompatible software, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

7.1.1.4 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

7.1.1.5 Database size estimation

A database is necessary to operate AdvancedCopy Manager of this version.

The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

7.1.1.6 Registration of access user for repository database (for Solaris, Linux)

This version of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager requires registration of an access user for the repository database.

Therefore, register the access user for repository database before starting Upgrade Installation.



See

For details about registering a username and a password, refer to "Installation procedure" in the "Software Release Guide".

7.1.1.7 Kernel parameter tuning (for Solaris, Linux)

For operations for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager of this version level, Kernel parameter tuning is required. Therefore, perform Kernel parameter tuning before starting Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on the tuning method, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.1.1.8 Confirmation of Port number for Communication service (for Solaris, Linux)

This version of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager uses additional ports. Therefore, make sure the new ports are unused before starting Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on the port number to be used, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.1.1.9 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

Before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Cancel the configuration information for Web server (For using AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.x on Windows Server 2003 only.)

Cancel the web server configuration information as follows:

1. Login to the system in which you want to uninstall the AdvancedCopy Manager.
The login user must have Administrator privileges to uninstall the previous version level.
2. If you configured the web server during installation, cancel the web server configuration information.
Execute the following command on the command prompt screen.

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\alias -u
```

For details on the command, refer to "Web server setting and setting cancellation command (alias)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" for the relevant previous version level.

2. Stop daemon. (for Solaris and Linux environments only)

Execute the following command to stop the daemon of AdvancedCopy Manager on the Management Server (Storage Management Server).

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stopacm
```

3. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- For Windows environment:
"A.7 Unsetup of database"
- For Solaris, Linux environment:
"A.8 Cancel of repository settings"

4. Uninstall Symfoware.

Uninstall Symfoware if you are using Symfoware Server that is included in AdvancedCopy Manager of the previous version level on Windows Server 2003.

Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.

In case of Cluster operation

Under cluster operation, the user must execute cluster unsetup before uninstallation.



For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Deleting Storage Management Server Transactions and Storage Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide for Cluster Environment" for the relevant previous version level.

7.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The "<System Drive>\ETERNUS_SF" directory is used as the base location for the Program Directory, Environment Directory and Work Directory.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

11 port numbers are used, as follows:

Service	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen	Used port number
Web Console service	ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
communication service 1	Communications service 1	1226
communication service 2	Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	Exclusive control service	9852
Internal use	Internal Port 1	28005
	Internal Port 2	28009
	Internal Port 3	28443
	Internal Port 4	24916

- Custom installation

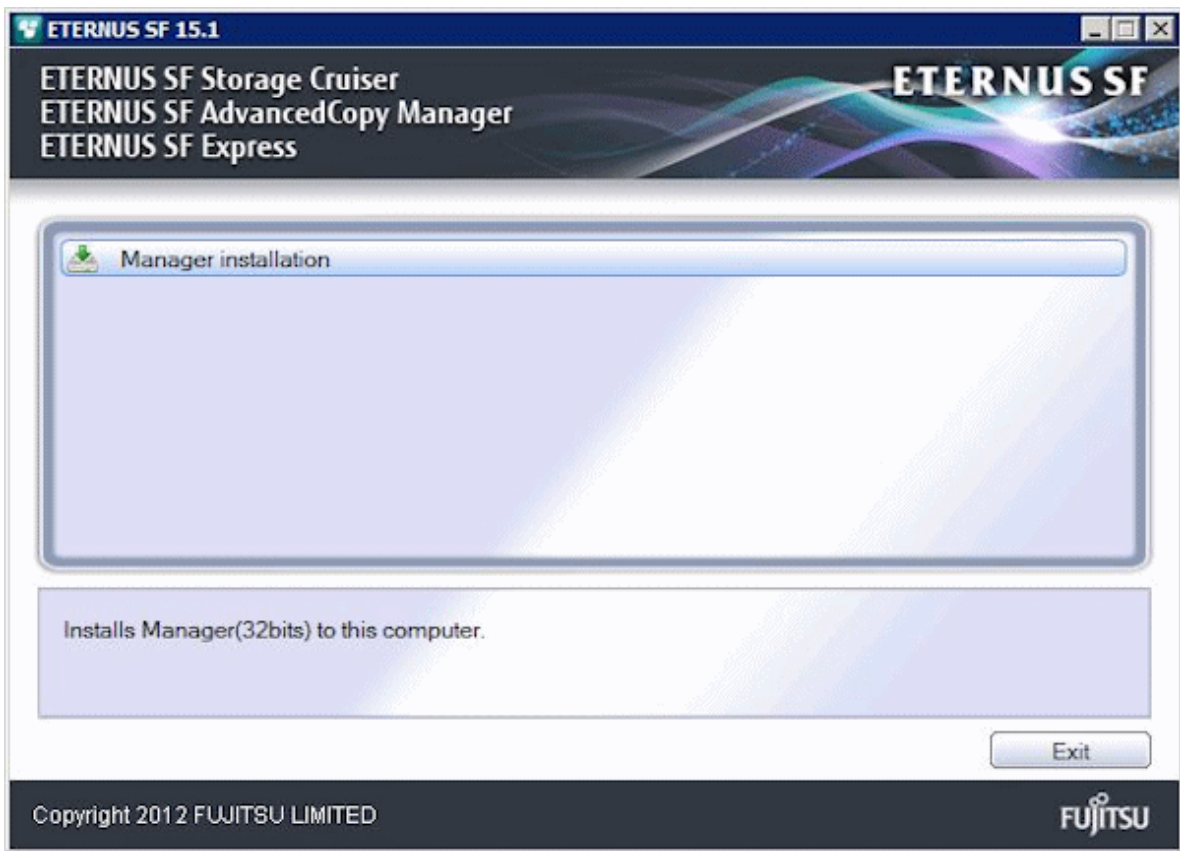
Upgrade is done by entering the configuration information on the screen (installation destination, communication service port numbers).

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

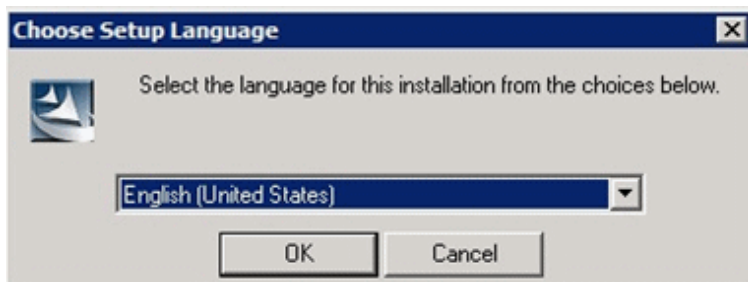
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

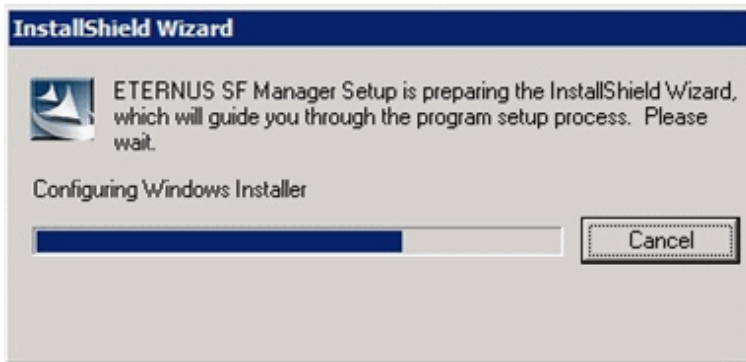
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



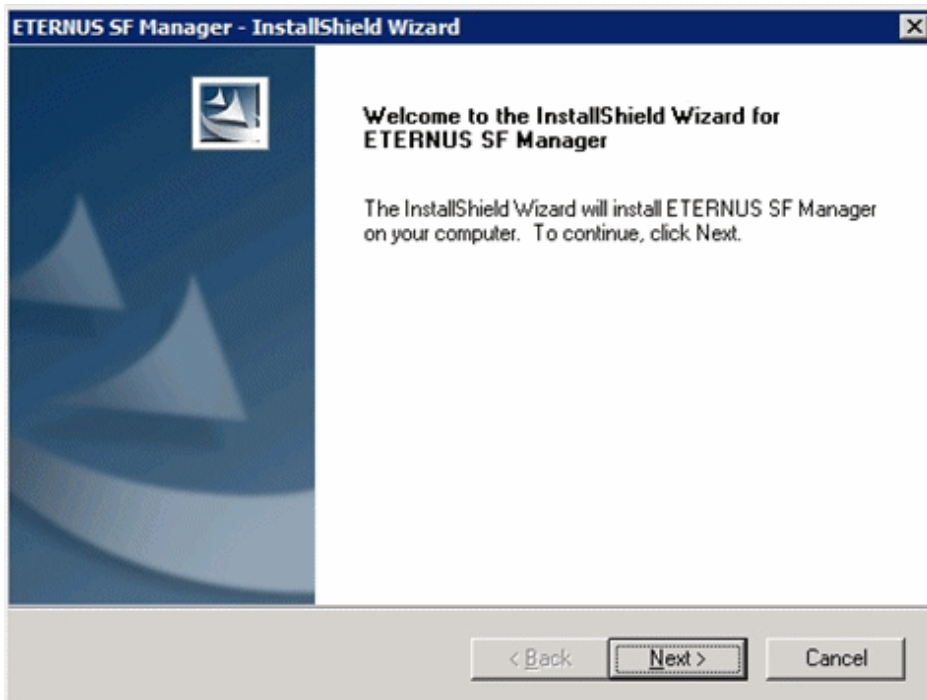
4. The [Choose Setup Language] screen is displayed. Select the language to be used for the installation and click the [OK] button.
The language selected in this screen is used during the installation, and also during the uninstallation.



5. The following screen is displayed. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this stage, click the [Cancel] button.

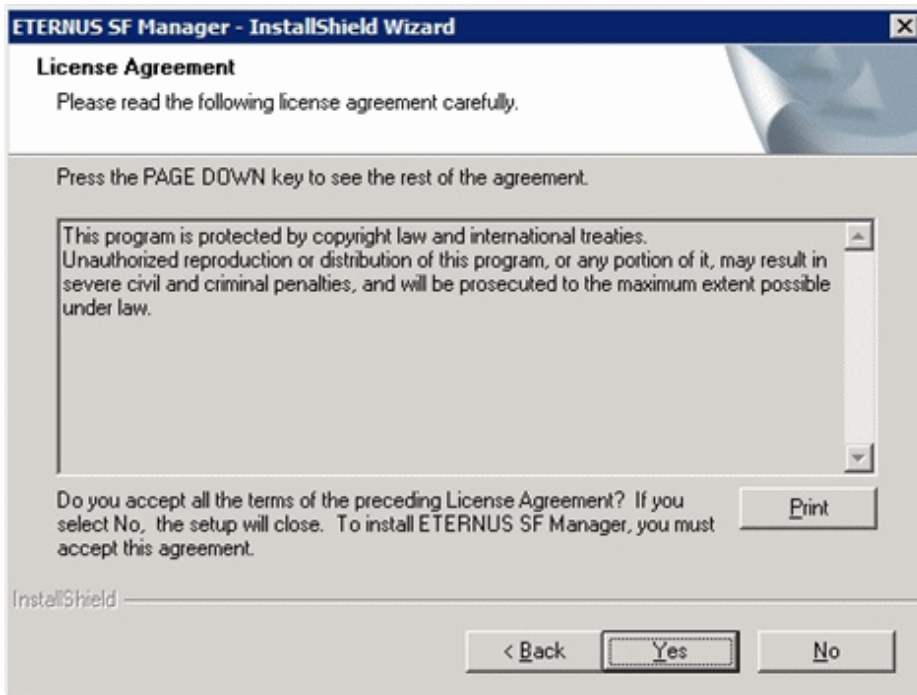


6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.

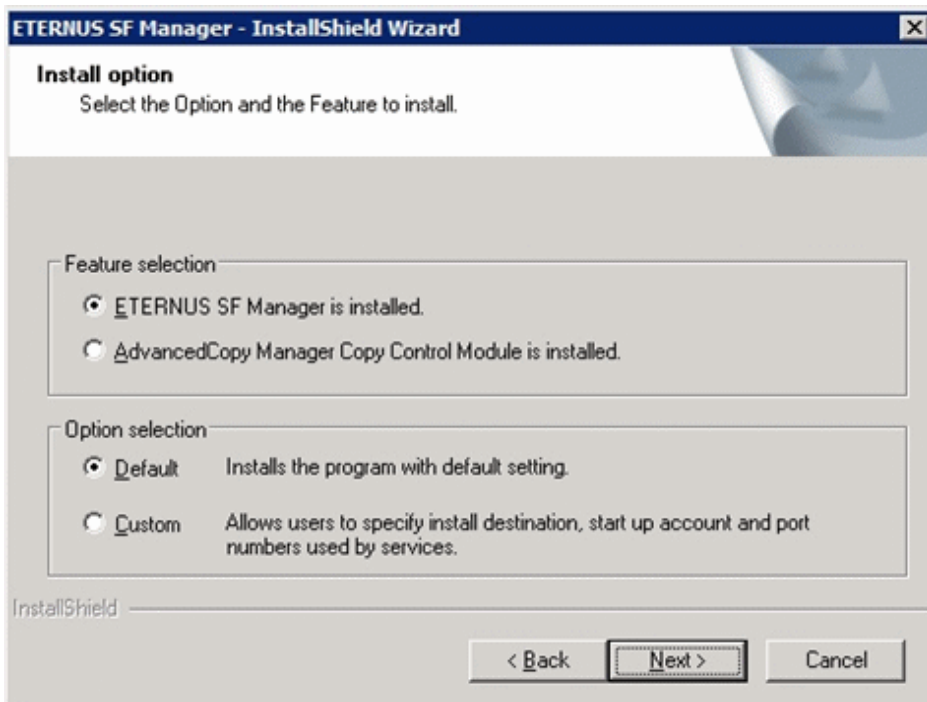


7. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.

After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



8. Select the functions and options to install in the [Install option] screen.



Feature selection

Select [ETERNUS SF Manager is installed.].

Option selection

Select the desired options according to the following information.

Install option	Explanation
Default	<p>Changing values in the [Installation Destination] screen and [Port Registration] screen is optional and can be omitted. In that case, steps 9 and 10 can be skipped.</p> <p>In this installation method, the following checks are automatically performed regarding the information provided as a default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is there enough disk space for the installation in the default directory? - Are the default port numbers available? <p>If an error is detected at this stage, a warning dialog is displayed. If no error is detected, the [Start Copying Files] screen is displayed.</p>
Custom	The installation information must be entered in the screens for step 9 and later.

9. Specify the installation directory in the [Installation Destination] screen.

If installing to a directory other than the default directory, click the [Browse] button and change the install location. After designating all of the directories, click the [Next] button.



Note

- The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ;] cannot be used in directory names.
- The number of characters in a directory name must be between 4 and 70.

10. Specify the port number for the services in the [Port Registration] screen.

Service Name	Port Number
ETERNUS SF Manager Apache service	9855
Communications service 1	1226
Communications service 2	4917
Repository service 1	2004
Repository service 2	15432
Remote access service	9851
Exclusive control service	9852

For Internal Use	
Internal Port 1	28005
Internal Port 2	28009
Internal Port 3	28443
Internal Port 4	24916

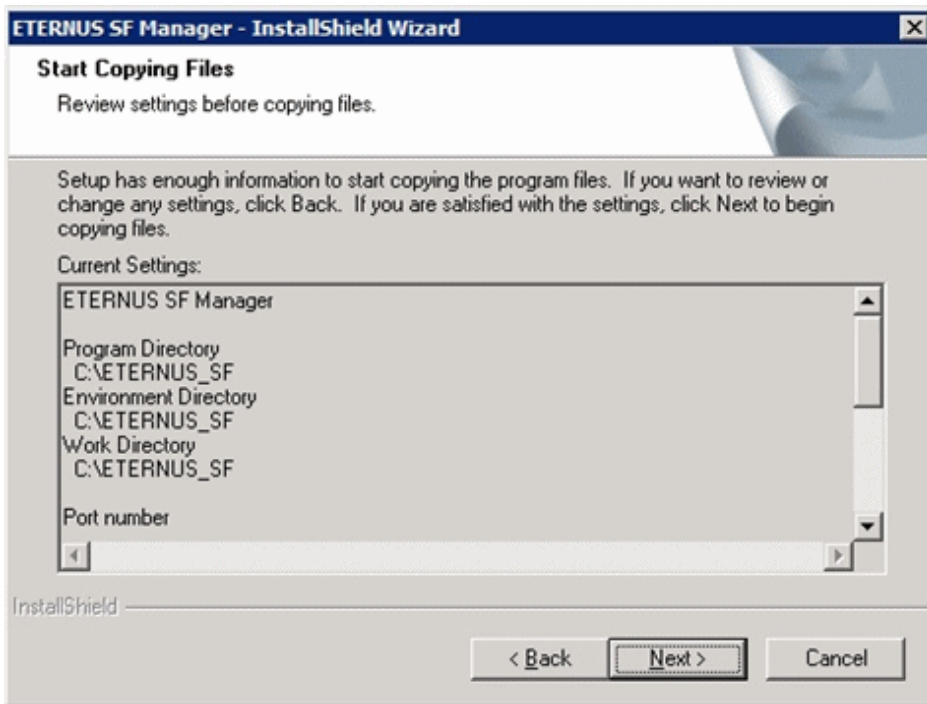
The initial values displayed are default values. If necessary, enter replacement port numbers matching your environment. Values between 5001 and 32767 are valid.

After finishing input, click the [Next] button. If one of the entered values is already in use, the input screen will be displayed again.

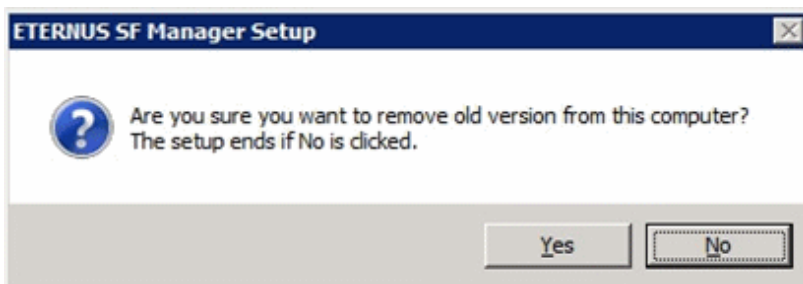
11. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen.

If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.

To go back and change a setting, click the [Back] button.



12. The following screen is displayed. To proceed with the uninstallation of the previous version, click the [Yes] button.



13. The previous version uninstallation is started.

The uninstallation program is executed.

Answer the questions on each screen as the uninstallation program executes.

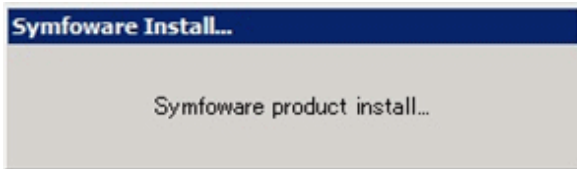
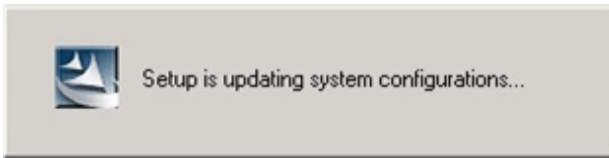
Point

- For the question regarding restarting the computer, click the [No] button. When clicking the [Yes] button, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When clicking [Yes], the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
- When the uninstallation of the previous version completes successfully, the [Uninstallation was completed successfully] screen may be displayed. Although the instruction on the screen indicates the deletion of the files and folders, do not delete the files and folders when operating the Upgrade Installation.

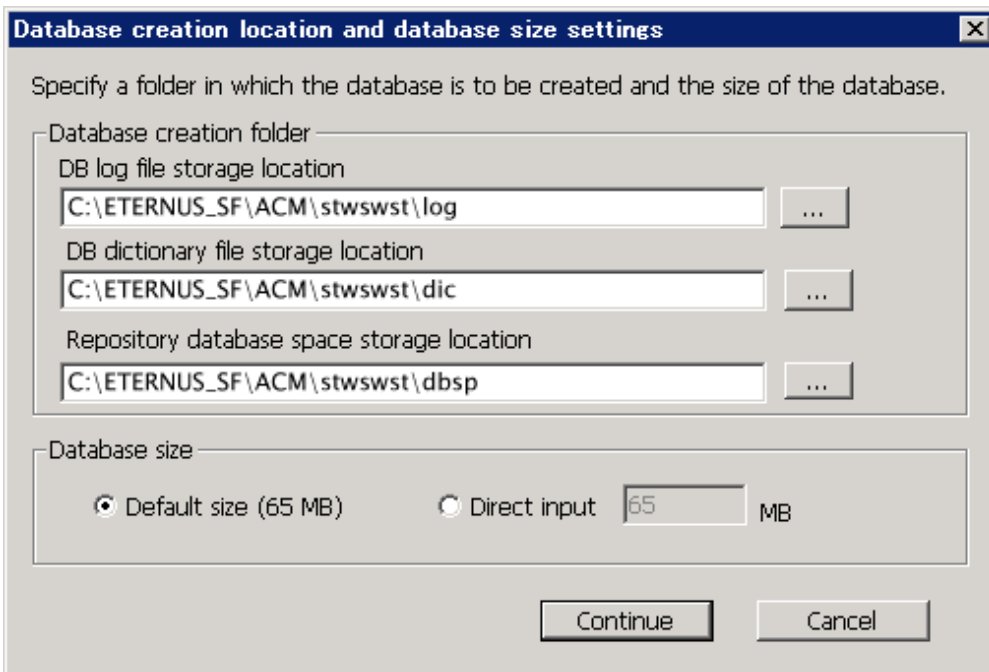
14. Once the previous version uninstallation is completed, the copy of the new program version is started.

During the process, the file copy completion status is displayed in the [Setup Status] screen.

15. Once the copy process ends, the system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



16. Enter the requested information for the repository database creation in the following screen. After the input, click the [Continue] button.



Database creation folder

This is the folder where the database will be created.

Enter the path, including the drive name, for each of the following database directories. The specified folders must be new NTFS folders. If a folder specified is not a NTFS folder or if it already exists, choose another name.

The default of the folders to store the repository database is displayed in each field. Change if necessary.

- DB log file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB log file.
- DB dictionary file storage location
Specify the folder for storing the RDB dictionary file.
- Repository database space storage location
Specify the folder for storing the repository database space.

Note

- Do not specify the shared folder as the folder where the database will be created.

- The number of characters in a folder name must be between 4 and 80. The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ; # ' @] cannot be used in folder names.
- Do not check the option [Compress drive to save disk space] in the **General** tab for any of these drives. Overhead is greater to a compressed drive than a non compressed drive. Depending on the amount of I/O, access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions.
- Do not check the [Compress or Encrypt Attributes] in the [Advanced Attributes] section of the [Properties] or [Advanced] part of the **General** tab. Overhead is greater to a compressed and/or encrypted drive. Access errors may occur in low OS resource conditions. If the encryption property is checked, access errors may occur when decryption cannot be performed.

Database size

The database size is entered in MB. The size to enter is the result of the calculation performed before installation as described in "7.1.1.5 Database size estimation". To use the default value, check the [Default size (65 MB)] box.

17. The following screen is displayed for the IP address and the database user settings. Once the input is finished, click the [Settings] button.

The default value is displayed in the screen. Change if necessary.

IP address

Enter the IP address of the Management Server (own system).
Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous production.

Repository access user

Enter username and password for the database access user.
The usernames entered here must have local login or domain login permissions at the OS level.
For the default username and password, refer to "Installation procedure" in the "Software Release Guide".
However, use other than default value because of security reasons.

The following conditions apply for the usernames and passwords:

- Username and password must be compatible with the underlying operating system.
- Username and password must be no longer than 18 characters (bytes).



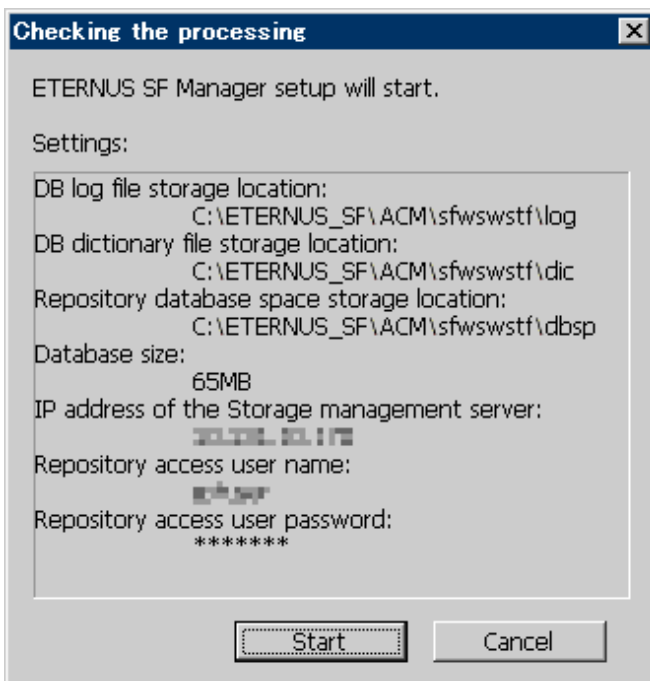
See

- If the user name specified here is not yet registered to the system, perform the registration, and add either local login or domain login privileges. Refer to the table below and specify a user that corresponds to the server type being used.

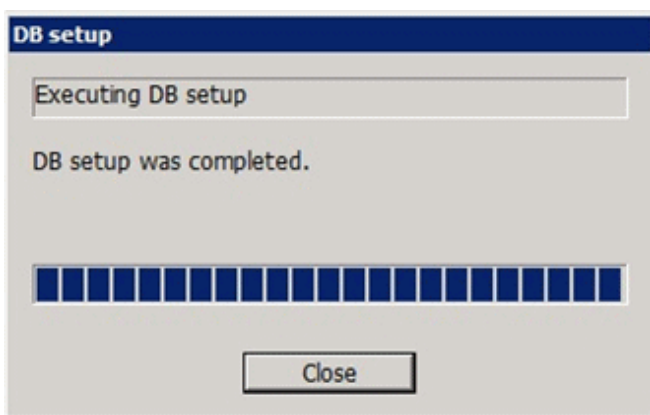
Server type	User to be specified
Domain Controller	Domain user
Machine that belongs to the domain	Local user
WORKGROUP (not belong to the domain)	

- When specifying a user name that is already registered to the system, use identical characters (e.g. uppercase and lowercase letters) to the registered user name.

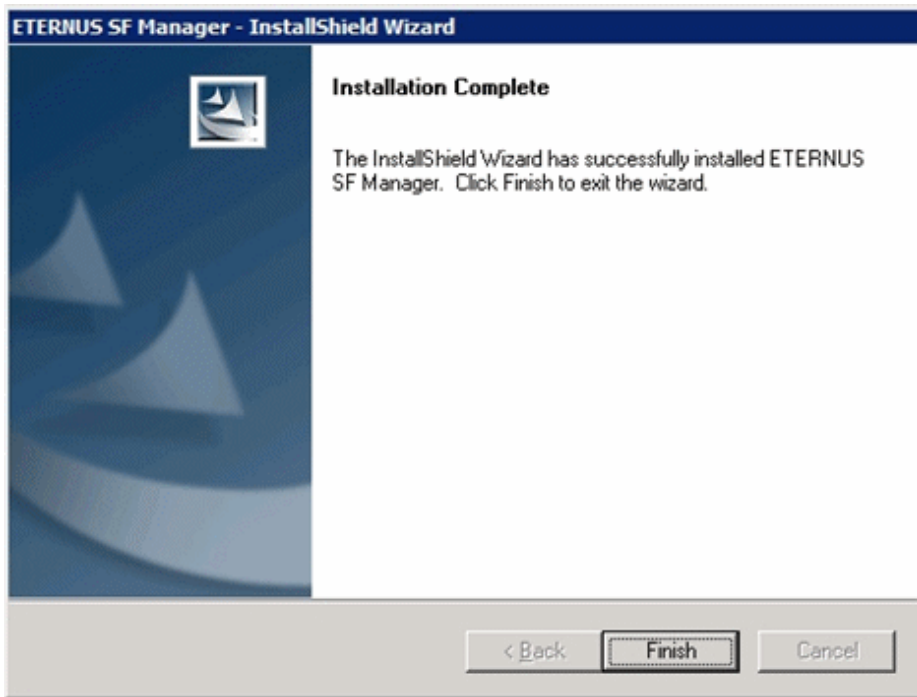
18. The following screen is displayed. Check the contents and click the [Start] button.



19. The database setup process starts. When the process is finished, the following screen is displayed. Click the [Close] button.



20. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



21. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Windows versions of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

7.1.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value

- Installation destination

The installation destination directories (/opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm, etc) cannot be modified.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

The following ports are used:

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Web Console service	esfmanagerweb	9855/tcp	ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service
communication service 1	stgxfws	1226/tcp	Communications_service_1
communication service 2	sscruisera	4917/tcp	Communications_service_2
Repository service 1	rdaswstf	32004/tcp	Repository_service_1

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Repository service 2	esfpostgres	15432/tcp	Repository_service_2
Remote access service	rmiswstf	9851/tcp	Remote_access_service
Exclusive control service	semswstf	9852/tcp	Exclusive_control_service
Internal use	esfmanagertomcat1	28005/tcp	Internal_port_1
	esfmanagertomcat2	28009/tcp	Internal_port_2
	esfmanagertomcat3	28443/tcp	Internal_port_3
	sscruiserm	24916/tcp	Internal_port_4
	astm	24917/tcp	Internal_port_5

- Custom installation

Modify the installation information (port number for the communications service, character code, and so on) for the Upgrade Installation.

Define the installation information to the install parameter file. Specify the install parameter file to which the installation information has been defined when executing the install shell.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.1 Install parameter file \(for ETERNUS SF Manager\)](#)".

 Note

- You cannot change the install directory such as /opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm.
- Make sure to perform the followings when the Management Server has two or more IP addresses.
 - Perform the custom installation.
 - Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous version for the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address".
- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64), perform the following procedure to check that Symfoware to be customized has been installed.
 1. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level and mount it.
 2. Execute the following command.

```
<DVD-ROM mount point>/Manager_unix/ACM/rhel5_x64/symfo/symfo_check -b
```

When the execution result of the command displays "i386", specify "1" to the install parameter "AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH" and perform the custom installation.

 Point

If an IP address for the Management Server is not specified in the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address", the IP address for the Management Server is set automatically during the installation. After the installation is completed, change the IP address if required. For the information on how to change an IP address, refer to "Changing the IP address of Management Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the operating system of the Management Server.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.

2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Execute the installation shell script.

Example of a default installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh
```

Example of a custom installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s <Install parameter file>
```

Specify the absolute path name of the install parameter file edited in advance for <Install parameter file>.

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                                     |
|               ETERNUS SF V15.1     |
|                                     |
| All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012 |
|                                     |
+-----+

Setting of installation parameter file.

Installation_function:      ETERNUS SF Manager

Character_code:             UTF8

Port number
  ETERNUS_SF_Manager_Apache_service: 9855
  Communications_service_1:          1226
  Communications_service_2:          4917
  Repository_service_1:              32004
  Repository_service_2:              15432
  Remote_access_service:             9851
  Exclusive_control_service:         9852
  Internal_port_1:                   28005
  Internal_port_2:                   28009
  Internal_port_3:                   28443
  Internal_port_4:                   24916
  Internal_port_5:                   24917

Repository database setup
  DB_file_directory:                /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
  RDB_dictionary_directory:         /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
  RDB_log_file_directory:           /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
  Repository_DB_space_directory:    /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
  Repository_data_size:              65
  Management_server_IP_address:
  AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH: 32bit
```

```
esfpostgres_UID:
Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:
```

- 7. The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```
An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:
```

 **Point**

.....
For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation.

When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
.....

- 8. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.
```

- 9. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# cd
```

- 10. Unmount the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

- 11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

7.1.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

Once the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager Upgrade Installation has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

7.1.4.1 Restoration from previous version

Restore the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for the previous version level.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

Restore the operational environment backed up in "7.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version".

 **Note**

.....
For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.
.....



See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Windows	A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Windows	Perform the steps in the following order: 1. A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows) 2. A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)
	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: 1. A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) 2. A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

Restore the operational environment backed up in "[7.1.1.1 Backup of the previous version](#)".



See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "[A.14 Restore of the environment setting files](#)".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, restore the definition of the license information.

Restore the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm restore command. For details of esflm restore command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Example of executing esflm restore command is as below. The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
> esflm restore <file_name>
Restoration of license database was performed successfully
```

7.1.4.2 Import of the Configuration information

Import the Configuration information from the previous version by executing the configuration information import command (esfimportdevconf) with administrator permissions.

For version upgrades from ETERNUS SF Manager Version 15.0B, this step is not necessary.

Check that the targeted devices can be accessed before executing the configuration information import command.

- For Windows environment (DOS prompt):

```
<Program directory>\Common\bin\esfimportdevconf
```

- For Solaris, Linux environment:

```
#/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdevconf
```

After executing the configuration information import command, confirm that the "Complete" is displayed in the [IMPORT STATUS] column in the configuration import status display command (esfimportdisplay) of the configuration information import.



Refer to "10.2 Command reference" for details about the each import command.

7.1.4.3 Setting up user account

Set up a user account in order to use the ETERNUS SF Manager functions.



For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up user account" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.1.4.4 Setting up for using Web Console

If you set up firewalls between the PC on which the Web Console is launched and the Management Server, make settings so as to allow transmission to pass the firewalls.



For details on how to set up, refer to "Setting up for using Web Console" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.1.4.5 License registration

Register the appropriate licenses.



Refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the settings.

7.1.4.6 Redefinition of the missing information

- Server information

When Management Server (Storage Managed Servers) and Managed Servers (Storage Servers) are the same, the operation management server is registered in the server.



Refer to "Register the server" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level about registration.

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure.



For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
-----
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90
Disk Array Name : DX90
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511##
IP Address : 10.124.6.251
Admin User : ****
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -
path X:
Successful completion.
```



When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

7.1.4.7 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the stguserset (Repository access user change command).



See

For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.

7.1.5 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation and setup of AdvancedCopy is completed. Restart the operation.

7.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent

The following shows the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

1. [7.2.1 Backup of repository data](#)
2. [7.2.2 Backup of the management information](#)
3. [7.2.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database \(for Windows\)](#)
4. [7.2.4 Uninstallation of the previous version](#)
5. [7.2.5 Installation of this version](#)
6. [7.2.6 Restoration of repository data](#)
7. [7.2.7 Changing server information](#)
8. [7.2.8 Restoration of the management information](#)
9. [7.2.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database \(for Windows\)](#)
10. [7.2.10 Updating the version information](#)

7.2.1 Backup of repository data

Back up the repository data by referring to the following sections on the Management Server. (Only when the Managed Server is operated in a cluster configuration)

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows	A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)

7.2.2 Backup of the management information

Back up the management information on the Managed Server by referring to the following table.

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows	A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)
HP-UX AIX	A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

7.2.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows)

When the backup and the restoration function of the Exchange Database are used, release the setting in reference to the manual of the previous version level.

- For Windows Server 2003 environment:

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Database in a Windows Server 2003 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Stopping backup copy process
- Delete the copy set of the hardware provider
- Delete source and replica volumes
- Cancel the hardware provider registration

- For Windows Server 2008 environment:

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Server Database in a Windows Server 2008 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Stopping backup copy process
- Delete source and replica volumes
- Cancel the hardware provider registration

7.2.4 Uninstallation of the previous version

Uninstall the previous version level in reference to the relevant previous version manual.

In the case of non-cluster operation



Note

In the course of the following procedures, be careful not to perform the procedure "Deletion of all storage servers".

- For Windows environment:

- For AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.1 or later:

Perform the procedures following "Uninstall procedure" described in "Windows Platform" under the section "Uninstall of Agent", in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation Guide" or "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide".

- For AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.0:

Perform the procedures following "Deleting applications or programs" under the section "Details of Agent of AdvancedCopy Manager uninstallation" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation Guide".

- For Solaris, Linux, HP-UX and AIX environments:

- For AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.1 or later:

Perform the procedures following "Daemon deactivation" described in "Solaris/Linux/HP-UX/AIX Platform" under the section "Uninstall of Agent", in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation Guide" or "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide".

- For AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.0:

Perform the procedures following "Daemon deactivation" under the section "Storage server uninstallation" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Managed Server.

In the case of cluster operation

If cluster operations are used for Managed Servers as Managed Server transactions, it is necessary to perform the un-setup of cluster settings before performing uninstallation.



See

For procedures for the un-setup of cluster settings, refer to "Deleting Storage Management Server transactions and Storage Server transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide for Cluster Environment" for the previous version.

7.2.5 Installation of this version

Install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent of this version, and setup the operating environment.

About installation

- In the case of non-cluster operation:

Refer to "Installation of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level, and install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

- In the case of cluster operation:

Refer to "Installation of ETERNUS SF Agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level, and install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

However, if the system environment is Linux 5 for Intel64, in Step 3 of "Installation procedure of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide", select the installation directory that is stated for "OS type - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64), not using the Symfoware linkage function", even if you are actually using the Symfoware linkage function.

Setting up the operating environment

- In the case of non-cluster operation:

Refer to "Setup of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level, and setup the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Afterwards, start the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent on the Managed Server. For the start procedure, refer to "Starting and Stopping Daemons" or "Starting and Stopping Services" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Managed Server.

- In the case of cluster operation:

Refer to "Customization of Managed Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level, and setup the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

7.2.6 Restoration of repository data

Restore the backed up repository data on the Management Server. (Only when the Managed Server is operated in a cluster configuration)

Execute stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command) to restore the repository data and then convert it for use with the current version of the repository.

Note

For restoration of the repository data, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

7.2.7 Changing server information

To ensure data consistency, use the Web Console or stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

If executing stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command), specify the Managed Server name to the -n option. Also, this command is to be performed on the Management Server.

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

7.2.8 Restoration of the management information

Restore the management information on the Managed Server by referring to the following table.

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows	A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)
HP-UX AIX	A.13 Restore of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

7.2.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows)

Reconfigure the backup and restoration functions of the Exchange database for which the setting has been released in reference to the manual of this version level.

- For Windows Server 2003 environment:

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Database in a Windows Server 2003 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Registration of provider
- Configuring the source volume and replica volume
- Registering the hardware provider copy set
- Registering database information

- For Windows Server 2008 environment:

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Server Database in a Windows Server 2008 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Installing and registering VSSHP
- Configuring the source volume and replica volume
- Registering the hardware provider copy set
- Registering copy sets in a batch
- Registering database information

7.2.10 Updating the version information

If not using cluster operation, and moreover, if the restoration of repository data has already been performed with the restoration of the replication management list, use the Web Console or `stgxfwcmmodsrv` (Server information change command) to update the version information for the Managed Server.

If executing `stgxfwcmmodsrv` (Server information change command), specify the Managed Server name to the `-n` option. Also, this command is to be performed on the Management Server.



For updating the version information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



- For details on the command, refer to "`stgxfwcmmodsrv` (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.
- For details about reloading the server information using Web Console, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

7.3 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module

This section explains the upgrade procedures for the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Version 13.x and 14.x.

7.3.1 Before installation

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

7.3.1.1 Selection of the install program

There are following two methods of performing the upgrade for the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module:

- [Method 1] Install the ETERNUS SF Manager program and use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module included with the ETERNUS SF Manager program.
- [Method 2] Install and use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program.



For **Method 1**, in addition to the command line interface, it is also possible to perform the operations related to the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module from the Web Console. However, this approach has the following drawbacks.

- The available disk space required for program installation is greater than that for **Method 2**.
- There is more incompatible software as compared to **Method 2**.
- Symfoware verification becomes necessary (only if Symfoware is installed onto the server onto which this operation is being performed)
- Database size estimation becomes necessary.

Upon understanding the above, please select the program to install.

7.3.1.2 Backup of the environment setting files

Back up the operational environment for the previous version level.



For details about the backup method, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, backup the definition of the license information.

Backup the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm backup command. For details of esflm backup command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version level.

Example of executing esflm backup command is as below. The file specified with *<file_name>* will be created as a backup file.

```
> esflm backup <file_name>
Backup of license database was performed successfully
```

7.3.1.3 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed. The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Amount of space required for this version level

The required amount of space for installing ETERNUS SF Manager program or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program. Refer to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the required amount of space.

- For using AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module in ETERNUS SF Manager program.

"Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager"

- For installing AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program

"Operating environment of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM"

Amount of space required for the previous version level

The required amount of space for installing AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program of the previous version level. Refer to "Operating Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide for Copy Control Module" for the relevant previous version.

7.3.1.4 Incompatible software uninstallation

Check if any incompatible software for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module of this version level is installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

If the incompatible software is found, refer to that software manual and uninstall it before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

.....
For details on the incompatible software, refer to "Operating Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.3.1.5 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with the ETERNUS SF Manager program. If the two following conditions are met, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.

- If Symfoware is already installed to the server to which the Upgrade Installation is performed. Moreover,
- The ETERNUS SF Manager program is being installed.



See

.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.3.1.6 Database size estimation

For installing the ETERNUS SF Manager, a database is necessary. The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

7.3.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

If using the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module included in the ETERNUS SF Manager program

Perform the Upgrade Installation by referring to "7.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)".

After the Upgrade Installation has completed, refer to the following manual for this version level and set up the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

- "Setup of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide"

If installing and using the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value.

- Installation destination

The "<System Drive>\ETERNUS_SF" directory is used as the base location for the Program Directory, Environment Directory and Work Directory.

- Custom installation

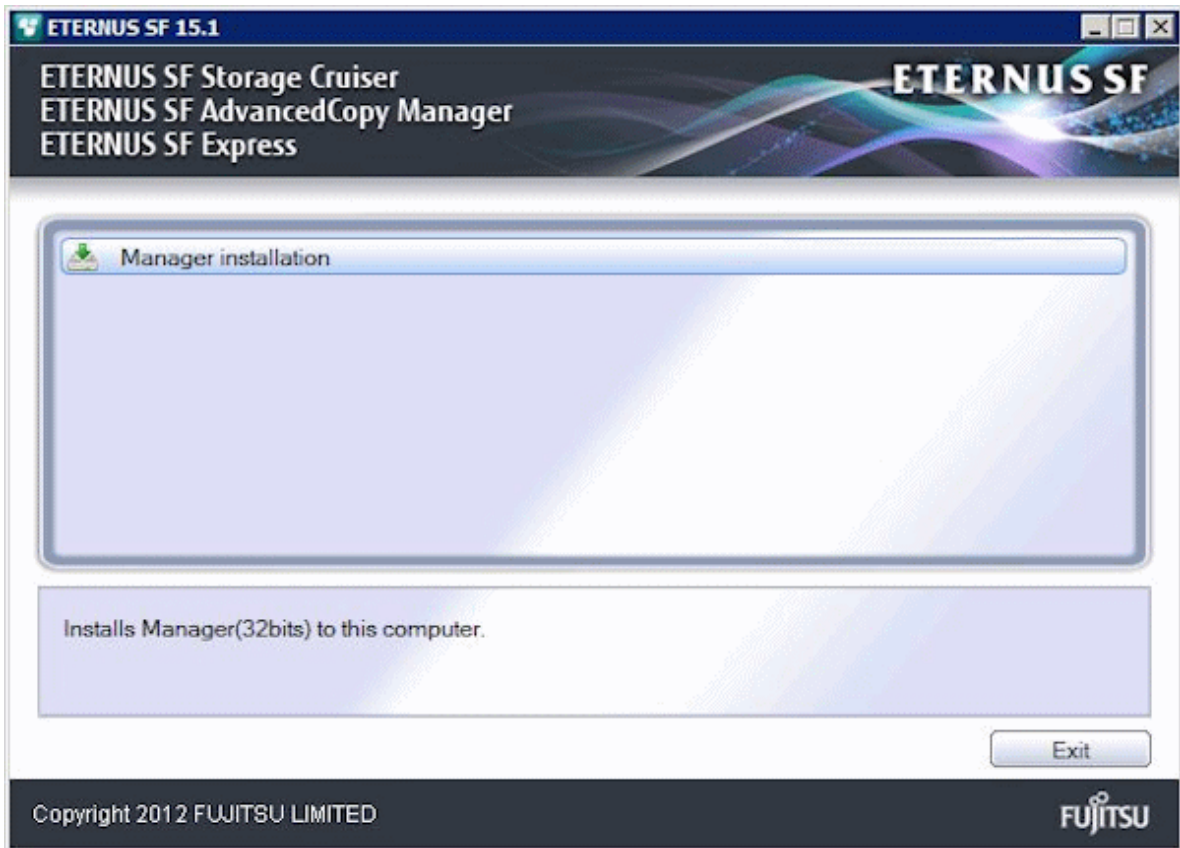
Upgrade is done by entering the configuration information on the screen (installation destination).

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

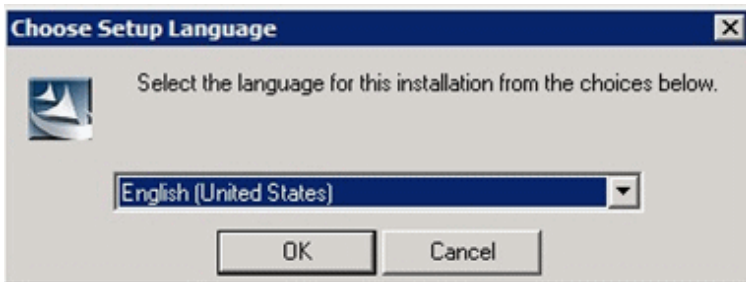
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

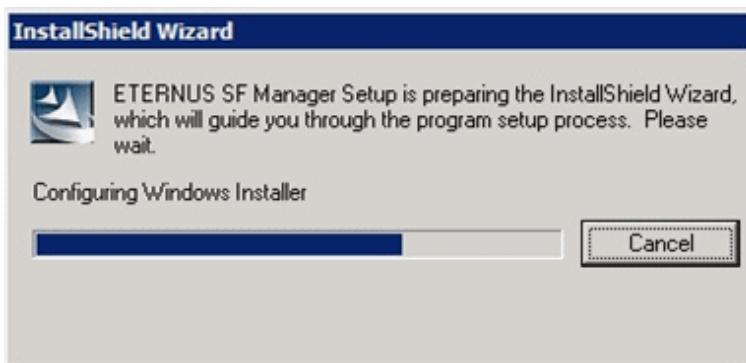
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



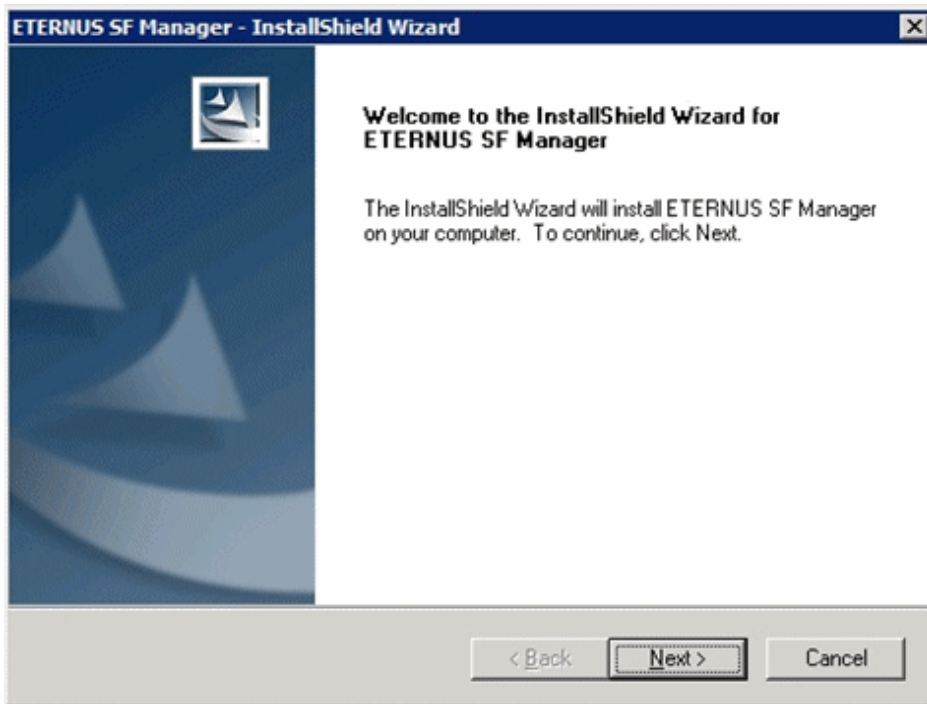
4. The [Choose Setup Language] screen is displayed. Select the language to be used for the installation and click the [OK] button.
The language selected in this screen is used during the installation, and also during the uninstallation.



5. The following screen is displayed. To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this stage, click the [Cancel] button.

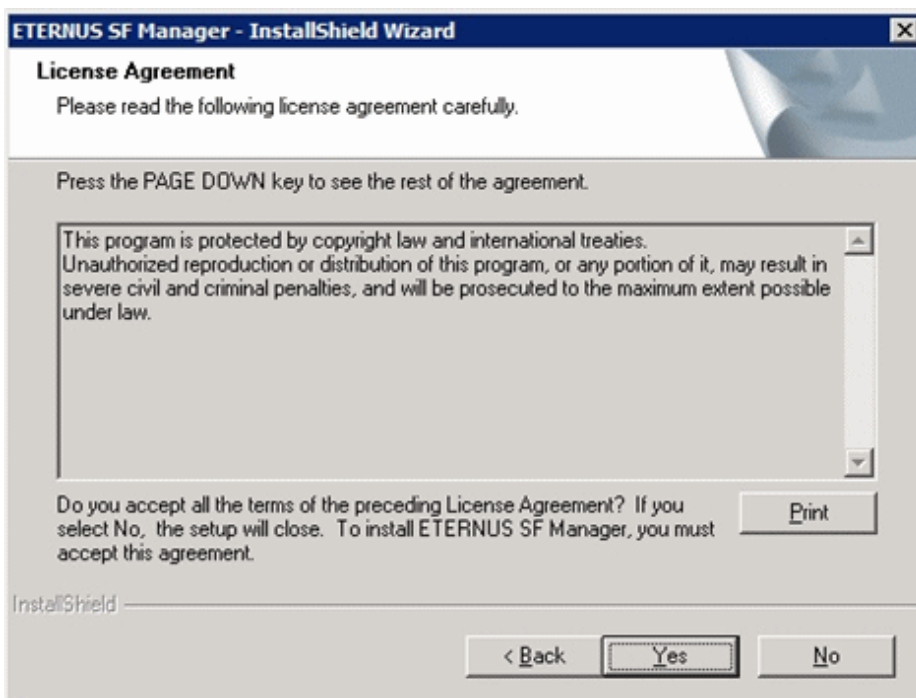


6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.

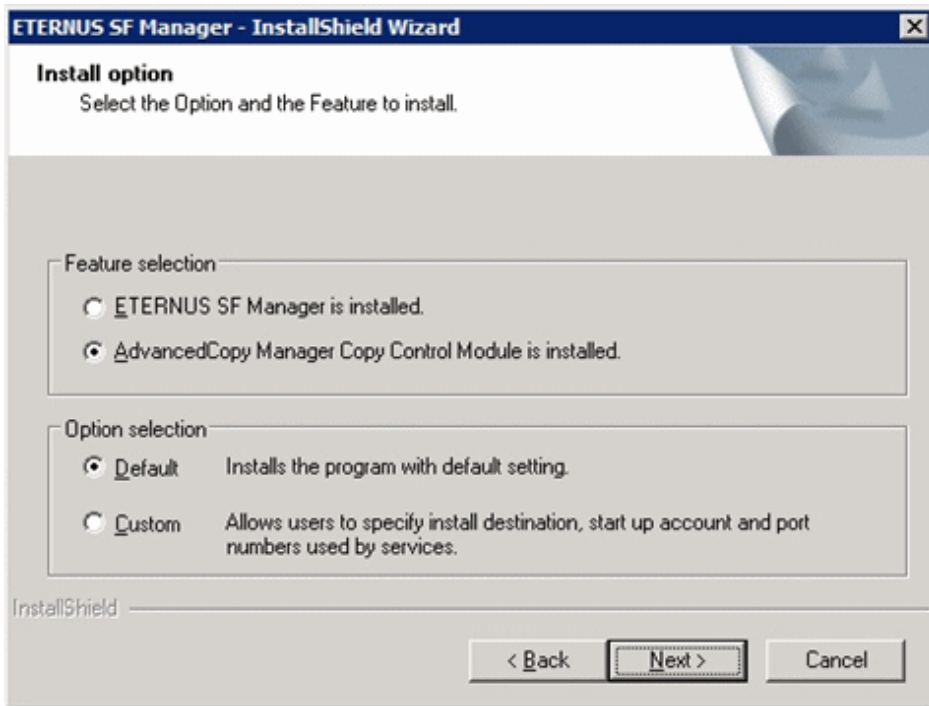


7. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.

After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



8. Select the functions and options to install in the [Install option] screen.



Feature selection

Select [AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed.].

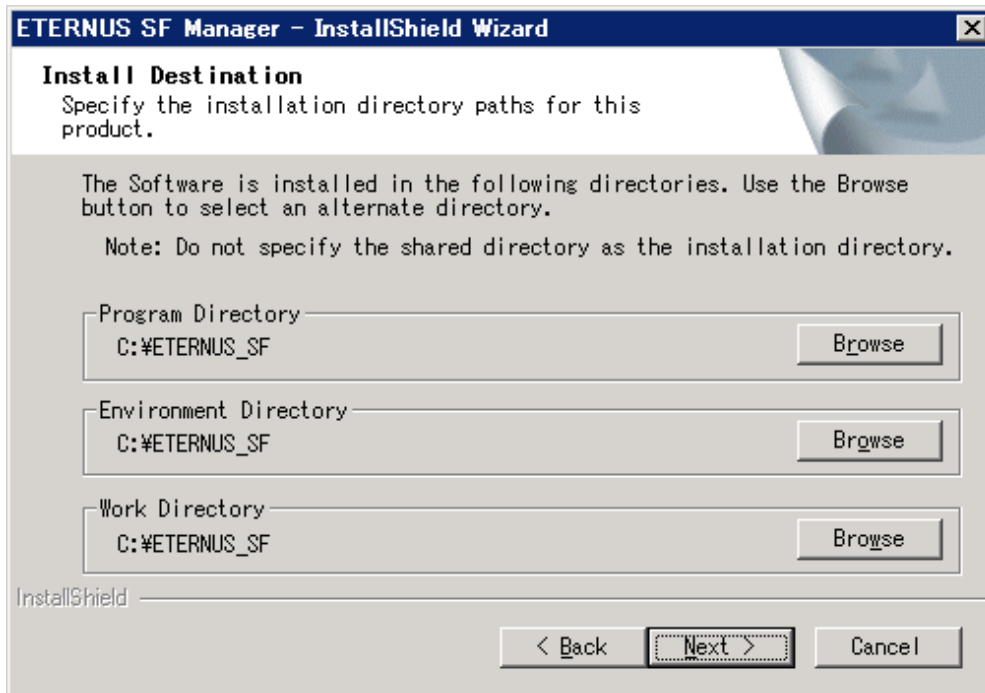
Option selection

Select the desired options according to the following information.

Install option	Explanation
Default	<p>Changing values in the [Installation Destination] screen is optional and can be omitted. In that case, step 9 can be skipped.</p> <p>In this installation method, the following checks are automatically performed regarding the information provided as a default:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is there enough disk space for the installation in the default directory? <p>If an error is detected at this stage, a warning dialog is displayed. If no error is detected, the [Start Copying Files] screen is displayed.</p>
Custom	The installation information must be entered in the screens of step 9.

9. Specify the installation directory in the [Installation Destination] screen.

If installing to a directory other than the default directory, click the [Browse] button and change the install location. After designating all of the directories, click the [Next] button.



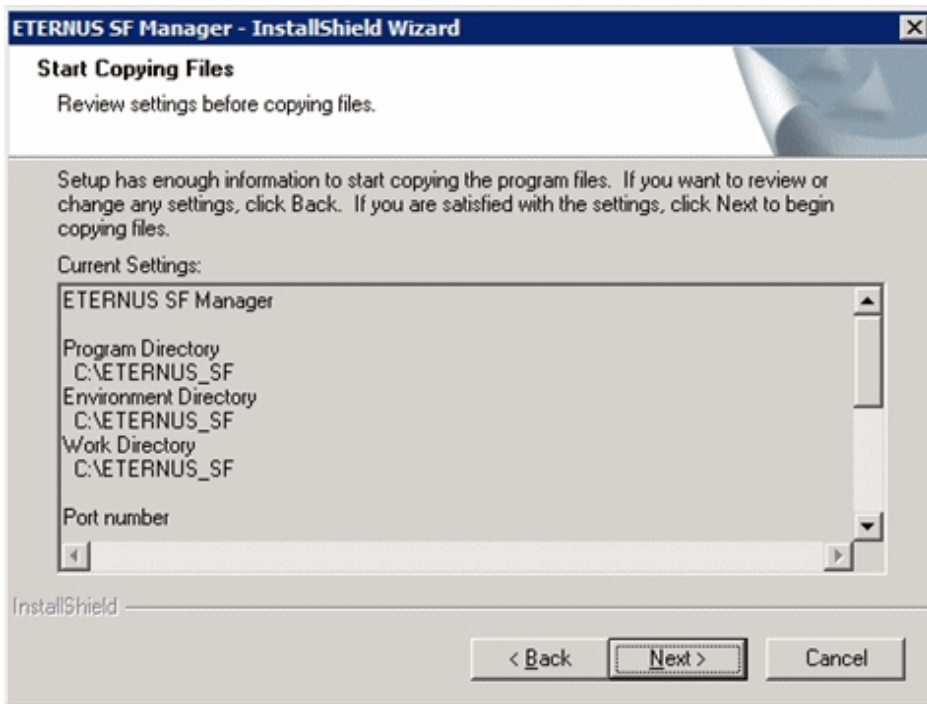
Note

- The blank space and the following characters [" | : * ? / . < > , % & ^ = ! ;] cannot be used in directory names.
- The number of characters in a directory name must be between 4 and 70.

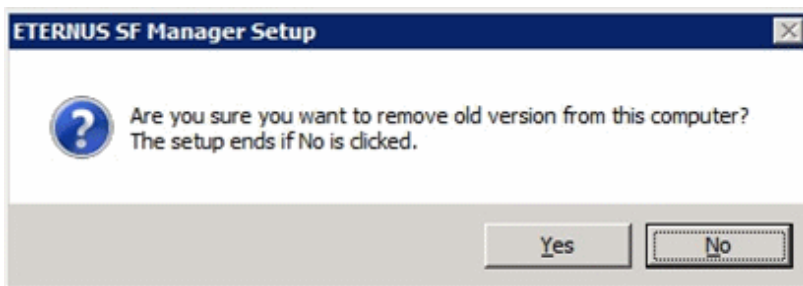
10. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen.

If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.

To go back and change a setting, click the [Back] button.



11. The following screen is displayed. To proceed with the uninstallation of the previous version, click the [Yes] button.



12. The previous version uninstallation is started.

The uninstallation program is executed.

Answer the questions on each screen as the uninstallation program executes.

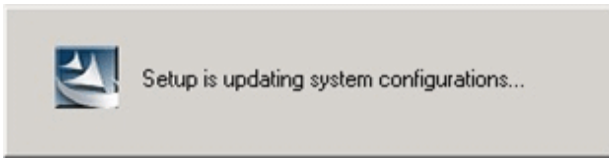
Point

- For the question regarding restarting the computer, click the [No] button.
When clicking the [Yes] button, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When clicking [Yes], the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.
- Do not delete the files and folders that are output after uninstallation completes successfully.

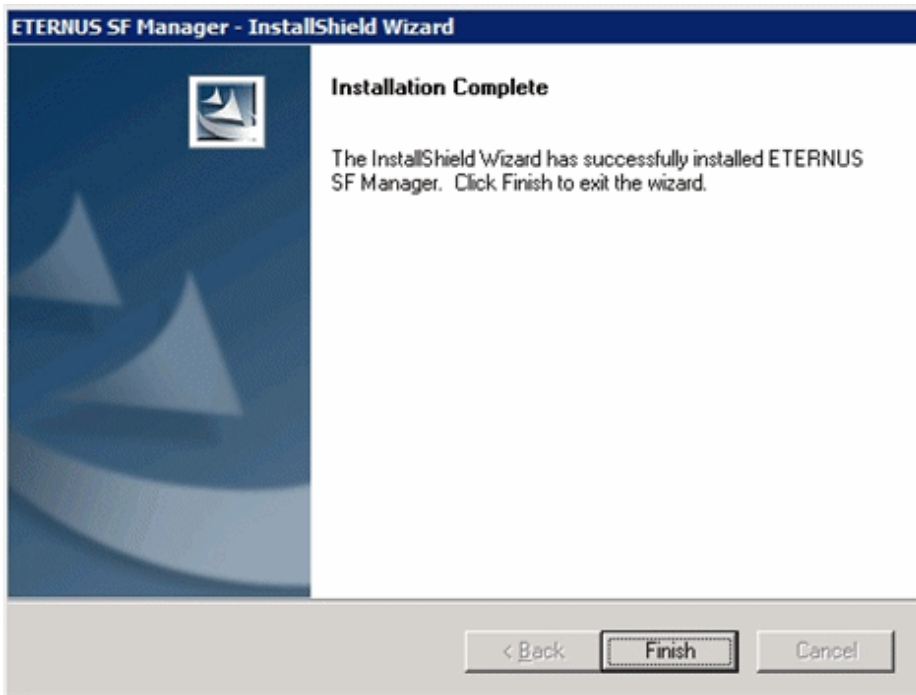
13. Once the previous version uninstallation is completed, the copy of the new program version is started.

During the process, the file copy completion status is displayed in the [Setup Status] screen.

14. Once the copy process ends, the system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



15. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



16. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager ends at this point. Perform the "[7.3.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks](#)" afterwards.

7.3.3 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

Point

There is no need to modify the install parameter file for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.3 Install parameter file \(for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module\)](#)".

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Specify the install parameter file and execute the installation shell script.

Though the install parameter file exists in the same directory as the installation shell script, it must be specified by using the absolute path name.

Example:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix/install_parameter_ccm.txt
```

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                ETERNUS SF V15.1                |
|                |                                |
| All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012 |
|                |                                |
+-----+

Installation_function:  ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager CCM

Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:
```

7. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
#/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdevconf
```

8. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# cd
```

9. Unmount the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

10. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager ends at this point. Perform the ["7.3.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks"](#) afterwards.

7.3.4 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

This explains the operations that should be done after performing the Upgrade Installation.

7.3.4.1 Restore of the environment setting files

Restore the environment setup file backed up in ["7.3.1.2 Backup of the environment setting files"](#).



See

For the restoration procedure, refer to "A.14 Restore of the environment setting files".

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, restore the definition of the license information.

Restore the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm restore command. For details of esflm restore command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Example of executing esflm restore command is as below. The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
> esflm restore <file_name>
Restoration of license database was performed successfully
```

7.3.4.2 Reconfiguration of device information

The following procedure is required to reconfigure the ETERNUS Disk storage system information.

For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list

Name   BOX-ID                                     IP Address
-----
E4000  00E4000M3#####E450S20A#####KD4030639004## 10.124.6.251
E8000  00E8000M9#####E890S20A#####KO4070639003## 10.124.6.241
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>acarray detail -a E4000

Disk Array Name : E4000
BOX-ID          : 00E4000M3#####E450S20A#####KD4030639004##
IP Address      : 10.124.6.251
Admin User      : ****
Access Volume   : X:

C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a E8000

Disk Array Name : E8000
BOX-ID          : 00E8000M9#####E890S20A#####KO4070639003##
IP Address      : 10.124.6.241
Admin User      : ****
Access Volume   : Y:
```

3. Remove all o registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a E4000
Successful completion.
```

```
C:\>acarray remove -a E8000
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a E4000 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -path
X:
Successful completion.

C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a E8000 -ip 10.124.6.241 -user **** -password **** -path
Y:
Successful completion.
```

Point

When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

7.3.4.3 License registration

Register the appropriate licenses.

See

Refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the license settings.

7.3.5 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation and setup of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is complete. The next task is the reconstruction of the managed environment in AdvancedCopy Manager. Refer to the following manual for this version level:

- "Setup of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide"

Chapter 8 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x

This chapter describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 15.x.

To upgrade AdvancedCopy Manager's manager to this version, it is necessary to install the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

If performing an upgrade to a system environment using Agent-based operation model, perform the upgrade in the following sequence.

1. AdvancedCopy Manager's manager
2. AdvancedCopy Manager's agent

Point

- If upgrading AdvancedCopy Manager, make sure that the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager version level is the same or higher than the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent version level.
- If AdvancedCopy Manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are both installed on the same server, when upgrading one, both of AdvancedCopy Manager and AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module will be upgraded. Therefore it is necessary to perform backups of the previous versions before starting the upgrade procedure.

8.1 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager (for Windows)

This section describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Windows.

Note

In the Windows Server 2003 environment, using the procedure mentioned below cannot perform the Upgrade Installation process. When upgrading versions in the Windows Server 2003 environment, take the following procedure:

1. Uninstall the before version product.
2. If Symfoware Server included in AdvancedCopy Manager is being used, take the following step:
Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.
3. Install this version level of product.

8.1.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of non-cluster operation:

8.1.1.1 Before installation (for Windows)

In the case of non-cluster operation, the following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Windows :

1. Check the Symfoware.
Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.

See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

2. Stop the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Stop_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

3. If the ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option is in use, stop the option.

On the Windows Service screen, stop the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option".

4. Backup the Windows system.

Point

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, backup the Windows system before performing the Upgrade Installation process.

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

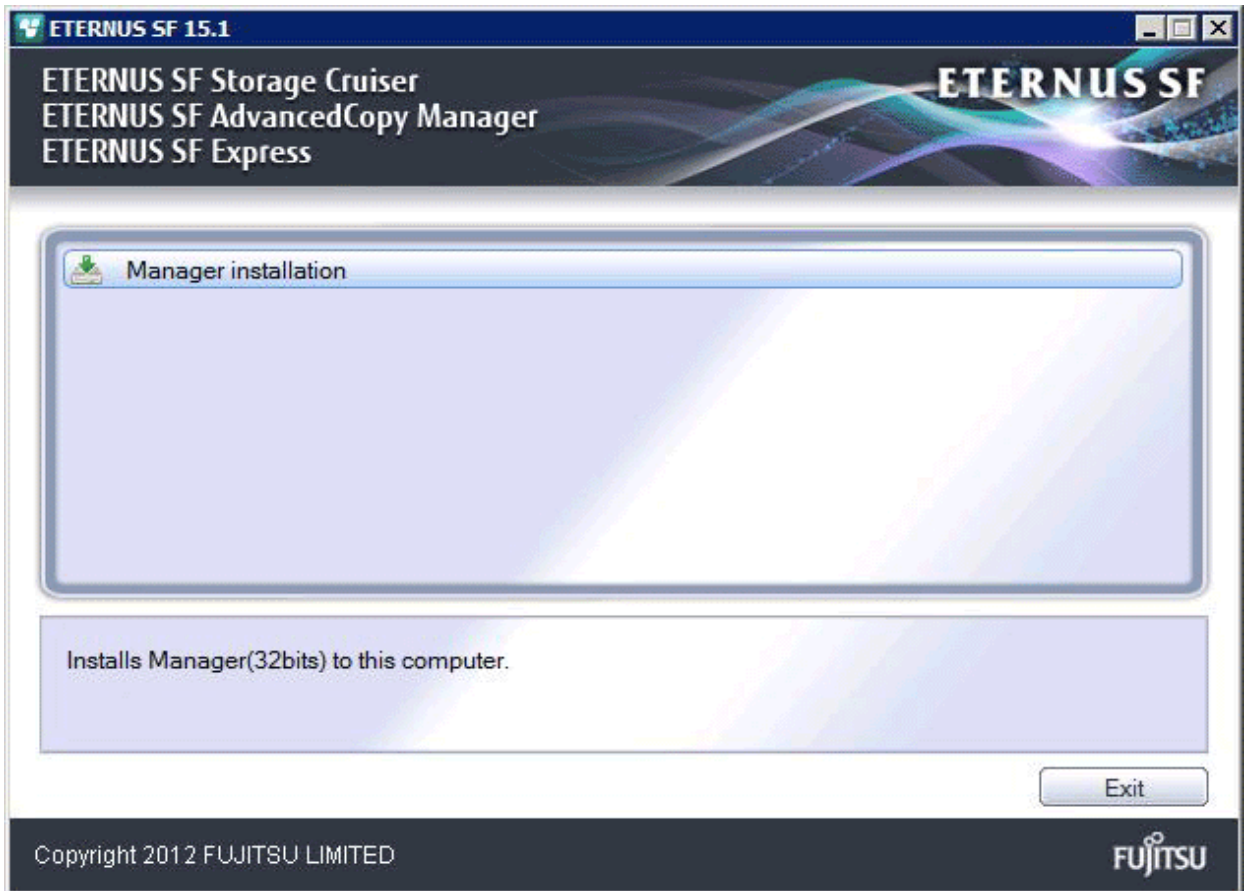
8.1.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

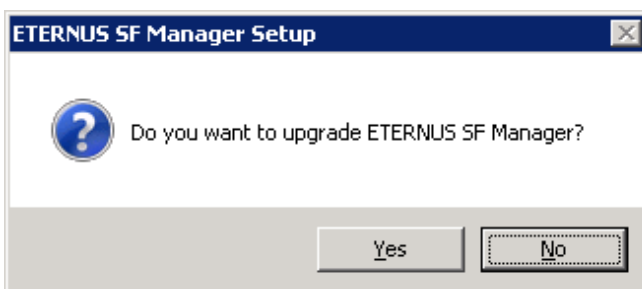
1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

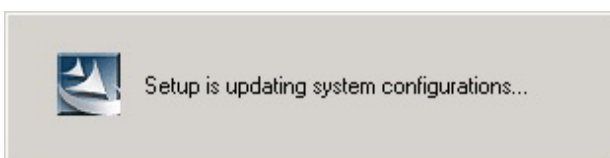
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



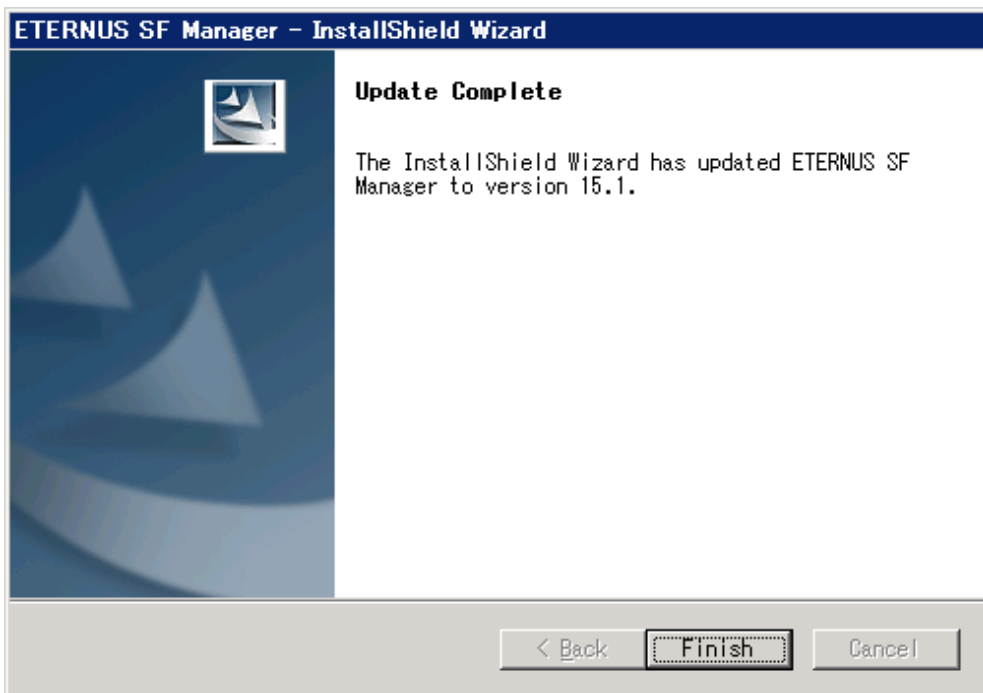
4. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



5. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



6. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



7. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.1.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows)

After the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Windows, perform the following procedure.

1. Start the service of ETERNUS SF Manager.

Execute the following batch.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\Start_ESFservice.bat
```

\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

2. When using the ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option, start the Optimization option.

On the Windows Service screen, start the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Optimization option".

3. Reset the password for repository access user.

Use stguserset (Repository access user change command) to reset the password for repository access user.

Point

.....
Even if the password is not changed, be sure to reset the password.
.....

See

.....
For details about the procedure, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.
.....

4. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

8.1.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of cluster operation:

The following values are used in the description:

Directory name	Explanation
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.
\$ETC_DIR	"Environment Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

8.1.2.1 Before installation

In the case of cluster operation, the following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Windows:

1. Check the Symfoware.

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.

See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

2. Check that the ETERNUS SF Manager services are stopped in the secondary node.

If the services are not stopped, use Failover Cluster Manager in the secondary node to stop the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.

3. Stop the ETERNUS SF Manager services in the primary node.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to stop the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager. However, place online the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data.

4. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, take the following procedure:

1. Check that the Managed Server transactions are stopped in the secondary node for a target transaction.

If the Managed Server transactions are not stopped, use Failover Cluster Manager in the secondary node to stop the Managed Server transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each secondary node for Managed Server transactions.

2. Stop the Managed Server transaction in the primary node for a target transaction.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to stop the Managed Server transactions.

However, leave the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions online.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each primary node for Managed Server transaction.

5. Stop the local transactions on all the nodes.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Stop] button.

6. Backup the environment and data.

- Backup the Windows system in the primary and secondary nodes.
- Backup the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data in the primary node.
- If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, backup the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions in each primary node for target transaction.



If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, be sure to back up the following before the Upgrade Installation process.

- Windows system
- Shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data
- Shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

8.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Save the environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

Copy it to any directory other than the installation destination directory for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.
The saved file is used for post-Upgrade Installation process.

3. Restore the original environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

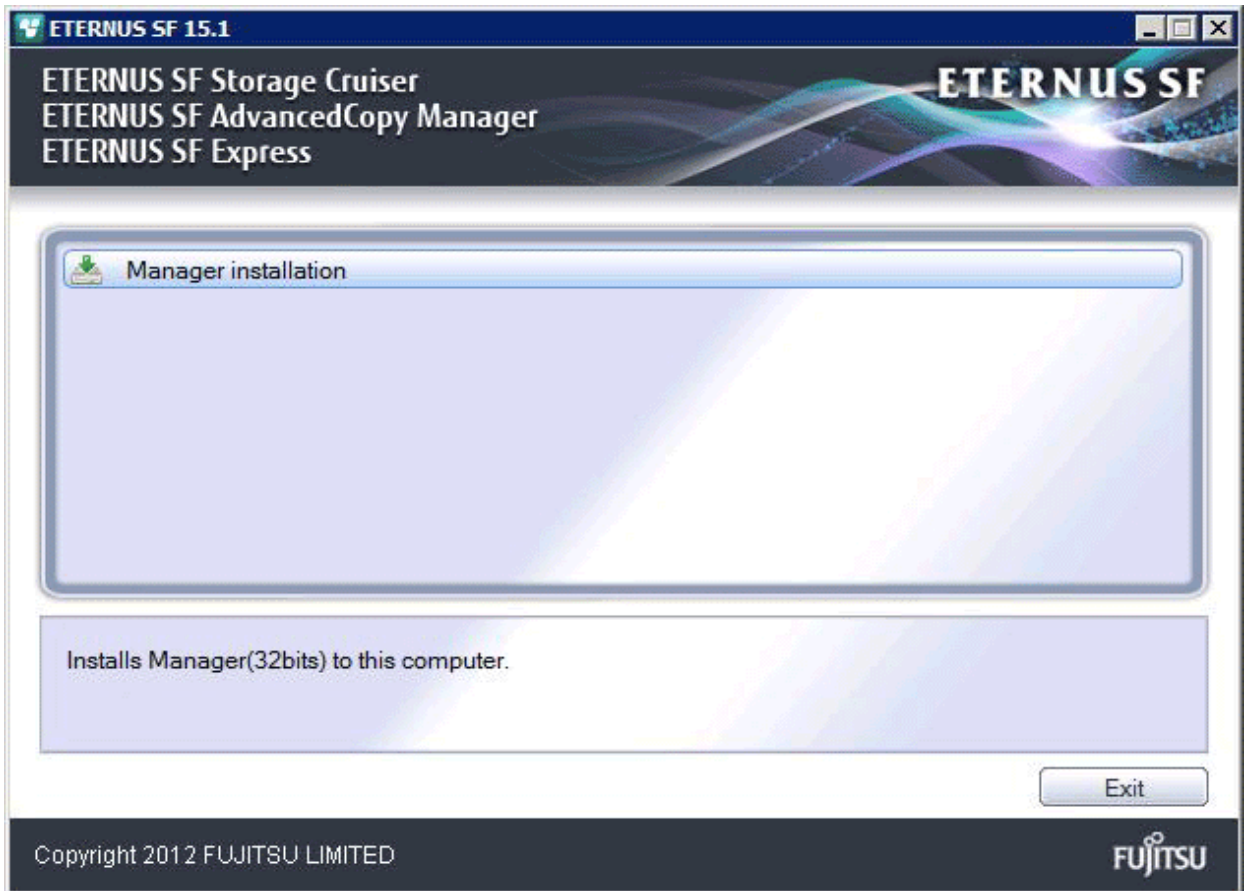
Write the original environment setting file over the copy destination file.

Original environment setting file	Copy destination file
\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\sys\sys.properties	\$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

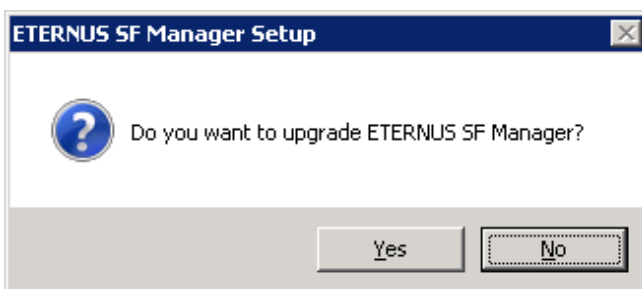
4. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

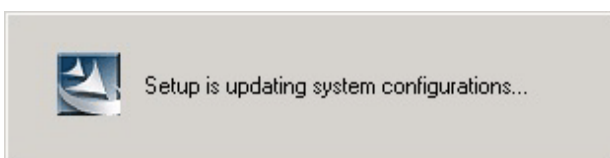
5. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



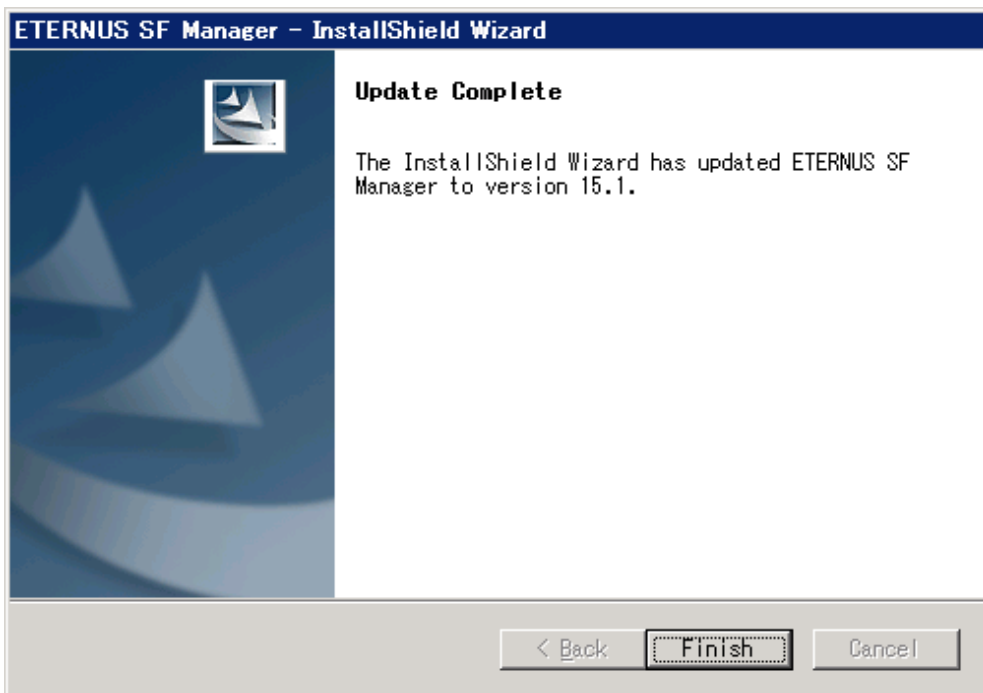
6. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



7. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



8. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



9. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process in the primary node, perform the following procedure.

1. Restore the environment setting file (sys.properties) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Write the environment setting file (sys.properties) saved in Step 2 of "8.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)" over the following file after the Upgrade Installation process:

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

2. Edit the environment setting file (.install.sys) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys

Change the stxs_etcdir information within the file to post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the stxs_etcdir information	Post-replacement the stxs_etcdir information
stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgrading directory</i>	stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgraded directory (Note)</i>

Note : Specify the value of stxs_etcdir set to the following file for the *Upgraded directory*.

\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys

Note

- Do not change anything other than the stxs_etcdir line in the \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys file.
- For the \$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys file, refer to it only, but do not edit it.

3. Edit the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager on the shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data.

Edit the following files:

- <Drive letter of shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\clsetup.ini

- <Drive letter of shared disk for ETERNUS SF Manager shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\swstg.ini

Change the Version information within each file to the post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the Version information	Post-replacement the Version information
Version=V15.0	Version=V15.1

Note

Do not change anything other than the Version line.

4. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, edit the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager on the shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data.

On the primary node for target transactions, edit the following files:

- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\clsetup.ini
- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transactions shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\swstg.ini

Change the Version information within each file to the post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the Version information	Post-replacement the Version information
Version=V15.0	Version=V15.1

Note

Do not change anything other than the Version line.

8.1.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node)

Perform the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is the same as that in the primary node. Refer to the "[8.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation \(Primary Node\)](#)".

8.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node, perform the following procedure.

1. Restore the environment setting file (sys.properties) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Write the environment setting file (sys.properties) saved in Step 2 of "[8.1.2.2 Upgrade Installation \(Primary Node\)](#)" over the following file after the Upgrade Installation process:

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties

2. Edit the environment setting file (.install.sys) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys

Change the stxs_etcdir information within the file to post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the stxs_etcdir information	Post-replacement the stxs_etcdir information
stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgrading directory</i>	stxs_etcdir= <i>Upgraded directory (Note)</i>

Note : Specify the value of stxs_etcdir set to the following file for the *Upgraded directory*.

\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys

Note

- Do not change anything other than the stxs_etcdir line in the \$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\install.sys file.
- For the \$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\install.sys file, refer to it only, but do not edit it.

8.1.2.6 Start ETERNUS SF Manager

After the "8.1.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)" and "8.1.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)", perform the following procedure.

1. Start ETERNUS SF Manager services in the primary node.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to start the transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.

2. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, start the Managed Server transactions in the primary node for a target transaction.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to start the Managed Server transactions.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.

3. Start the local transactions on all the nodes.

Perform the following procedure.

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Start] button.

4. Reset the password for repository access user in the primary node.

Use stguserset (Repository access user change command) to reset the password for repository access user.

Point

Even if the password is not changed, be sure to reset the password.

See

For details about the procedure, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level

5. Change the server information in the primary node.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)" for this version level.

6. If Managed Server transactions coexist in the cluster system, change the server information for Managed Server transactions.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Managed Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

This operation should be done in the primary node for Management Server transactions.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.

 **Note**

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

 **See**

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

8.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager (for Solaris, Linux)

This section describes the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Solaris and Linux.

8.2.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux)

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Solaris and Linux.

8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version

Back up the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for Solaris and Linux for the previous version level.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.

 **See**

Back up the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

When AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is installed, backup the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager for the previous version level.



See

For details on the backup method for the operational environment, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

Backup of common control repository

Backup the common control repository.



See

For details about the backup method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- "[A.16 Backup of common control repository \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)".

Backup of license management database

Backup the license management database,



See

For details about the backup method of the license management database, refer to the following section:

- "[A.18 Backup of license management database \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)".

8.2.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Required disk space for the new version

This space is required to install this version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Required disk space for the previous version

This space is required to install the previous version of the ETERNUS SF Manager program.

For details on the required space, refer to "Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version.

8.2.1.3 Symfoware verification

Symfoware product is bundled with this product. If Symfoware is already installed on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed, it is necessary to check the Symfoware environment before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

If Symfoware is not installed, this verification is not necessary.

8.2.1.4 Database size estimation

A database is necessary to operate AdvancedCopy Manager of this version.
The database size must be estimated before starting the Upgrade Installation.



See

.....
For details on how to check, refer to "Before installation" under the chapter "Installation of ETERNUS SF Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.
.....

8.2.1.5 Preparation for uninstallation of the previous version level

Before starting the Upgrade Installation, the following must be done to prepare for uninstallation of the previous version level.

1. Stop daemon.

Execute the following command to stop the daemon of AdvancedCopy Manager on the Management Server.

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stopacm
```

2. Execution of DB unsetup.

Refer to the following sections and perform the repository database unsetup of the previous version level:

- "[A.8 Cancel of repository settings](#)"

In case of Cluster operation

Under cluster operation, the user must execute cluster unsetup before uninstallation.



See

.....
For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Deletion of Cluster Environment for Management Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for the relevant previous version level.
.....

8.2.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

- Default installation

The following configuration is used without the need to input any value

- Installation destination

The installation destination directories (/opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm, etc) cannot be modified.

- Port numbers for the various communication services

The following ports are used:

Service	Service Name	Used port number	Display name on the [Port Registration] screen
Web Console service	esfmanagerweb	9855/tcp	ETERNUS_SF_Manager_ap ache_service
communication service 1	stgxfws	1226/tcp	Communications_service_1
communication service 2	sscruisera	4917/tcp	Communications_service_2
Repository service 1	rdaswstf	32004/tcp	Repository_service_1
Repository service 2	esfpostgres	15432/tcp	Repository_service_2
Remote access service	rmiswstf	9851/tcp	Remote_access_service
Exclusive control service	semswstf	9852/tcp	Exclusive_control_service
Internal use	esfmanagertomcat1	28005/tcp	Internal_port_1
	esfmanagertomcat2	28009/tcp	Internal_port_2
	esfmanagertomcat3	28443/tcp	Internal_port_3
	sscruiserm	24916/tcp	Internal_port_4
	astm	24917/tcp	Internal_port_5

- Custom installation

Modify the installation information (port number for the communications service, character code, and so on) for the Upgrade Installation.

Define the installation information to the install parameter file. Specify the install parameter file to which the installation information has been defined when executing the install shell.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "B.1 Install parameter file (for ETERNUS SF Manager)".

 Note

- You cannot change the install directory such as /opt/FJSVesfcm, /etc/opt/FJSVesfcm, /var/opt/FJSVesfcm.
- Make sure to perform the followings when the Management Server has two or more IP addresses.
 - Perform the custom installation.
 - Specify the IP address of the Management Server used with the previous version for the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address".
- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64), perform the following procedure to check that Symfoware to be customized has been installed.
 1. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level and mount it.
 2. Execute the following command.

```
<DVD-ROM mount point>/Manager_unix/ACM/rhel5_x64/symfo/symfo_check -b
```

When the execution result of the command displays "i386", specify "1" to the install parameter "AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH" and perform the custom installation.

Point

If an IP address for the Management Server is not specified in the install parameter "Management_server_IP_address", the IP address for the Management Server is set automatically during the installation. After the installation is completed, change the IP address if required. For the information on how to change an IP address, refer to "Changing the IP address of Management Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the operating system of the Management Server.

Note

When Symfoware is already installed, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV temporarily.
2. Perform the Upgrade Installation.
3. Start the processes of Symfoware/RDB, WebDBtools, and RDA-SV.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```

4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Execute the installation shell script.

Example of a default installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh
```

Example of a custom installation:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s <Install parameter file>
```

Specify the absolute path name of the install parameter file edited in advance for <Install parameter file>.

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                                     |
|               ETERNUS SF V15.1     |
|                                     |
| All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012 |
|                                     |
+-----+

Setting of installation parameter file.

Installation_function:      ETERNUS SF Manager
```

```
Character_code:          UTF8

Port number
  ETERNUS_SF_Manager_Apache_service: 9855
  Communications_service_1:          1226
  Communications_service_2:          4917
  Repository_service_1:              32004
  Repository_service_2:              15432
  Remote_access_service:             9851
  Exclusive_control_service:         9852
  Internal_port_1:                   28005
  Internal_port_2:                   28009
  Internal_port_3:                   28443
  Internal_port_4:                   24916
  Internal_port_5:                   24917

Repository database setup
  DB_file_directory:                 /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
  RDB_dictionary_directory:          /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
  RDB_log_file_directory:            /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
  Repository_DB_space_directory:     /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
  Repository_data_size:              65
  Management_server_IP_address:
  AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH: 32bit
  esfpostgres_UID:
```

Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:

7. The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```
An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:
```



.....

For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation.

When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.

.....

8. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.
```

9. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# cd
```

10. Unmount the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager ends at this point.

In the case of non-cluster operation, perform the "8.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In the case of cluster operation, refer to "Preparations for Customizing Management Server Transactions" and "Customization for Management Server Transaction" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level to setup the cluster operation. Perform "8.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

8.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

Once the AdvancedCopy Manager's manager Upgrade Installation has been completed, the following tasks need to be performed.

8.2.3.1 Restoration from previous version

Restore the operational environment of AdvancedCopy Manager's manager for the previous version level.

AdvancedCopy Manager operational environment

Restore the operational environment backed up in "8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



Note

For restoration of the operational environment, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

Restore the operational environment by referring to the following table.

Server type	OS	Reference
Management Server	Solaris Linux	A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)
Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server	Solaris Linux	Perform the steps in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux) A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module operational environment

Restore the operational environment backed up in "8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details on the restoration method, refer to "A.14 Restore of the environment setting files".

Restoration of license management database

Restore the license management database backed up in "8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



See

For details about the restoration method of license management database, refer to the following section:

- "A.22 Restore of license management database (for Solaris, Linux)".

Restoration of the common control repository

Restore the common control repository backed up in "8.2.1.1 Backup of the previous version".



For details about the restoration method of the common control repository, refer to the following section:

- "A.20 Restore of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux)".

8.2.3.2 Redefinition of the missing information

- AdvancedCopy Manage Copy Control Module configuration information

To use the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module, set the device information again in accordance with the following procedure. (Command is an example for Windows)

The following procedure is required to reconfigure the ETERNUS Disk storage system information.



For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
Name BOX-ID IP Address
-----
DX90 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511## 10.124.6.251
```

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a DX90
Disk Array Name : DX90
BOX-ID : 00ETERNUSDXL##ET09E24B####LH4311015511##
IP Address : 10.124.6.251
Admin User : ****
Access Volume : X:
```

3. Remove all of registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a DX90
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a DX90 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -
path X:
Successful completion.
```

Point

When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

8.2.3.3 Change password of access user for repository database

Using the default password of access user for repository database may cause security problem.

Change the user information of the operating system and reconfigure the repository access user information by using the stguserset (Repository access user change command).

See

For the procedure of changing password, refer to "Change of password or deletion of the user who was specified as the repository access user" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for the corresponding operating system.

8.2.4 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation and setup of AdvancedCopy is complete. Restart the operation.

8.3 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Windows Server 2008 environment)

This section explains the upgrade procedures for the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent for Windows Server 2008 environment.

8.3.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of non-cluster operation:

8.3.1.1 Before installation (for Windows Server 2008 environment)

In the case of non-cluster operation, the following preparations must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent running in the Windows Server 2008 environment.

1. Stop the service of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Stop] button.

2. Backup the Windows system.

Point

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, backup the Windows system before performing the Upgrade Installation process.

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

8.3.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows Server 2008 environment)

The following shows the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent running in the Windows Server 2008 environment.

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Check the architecture of installed AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Select [Control Panel] -> [Add or Remove Programs] to check the architecture of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

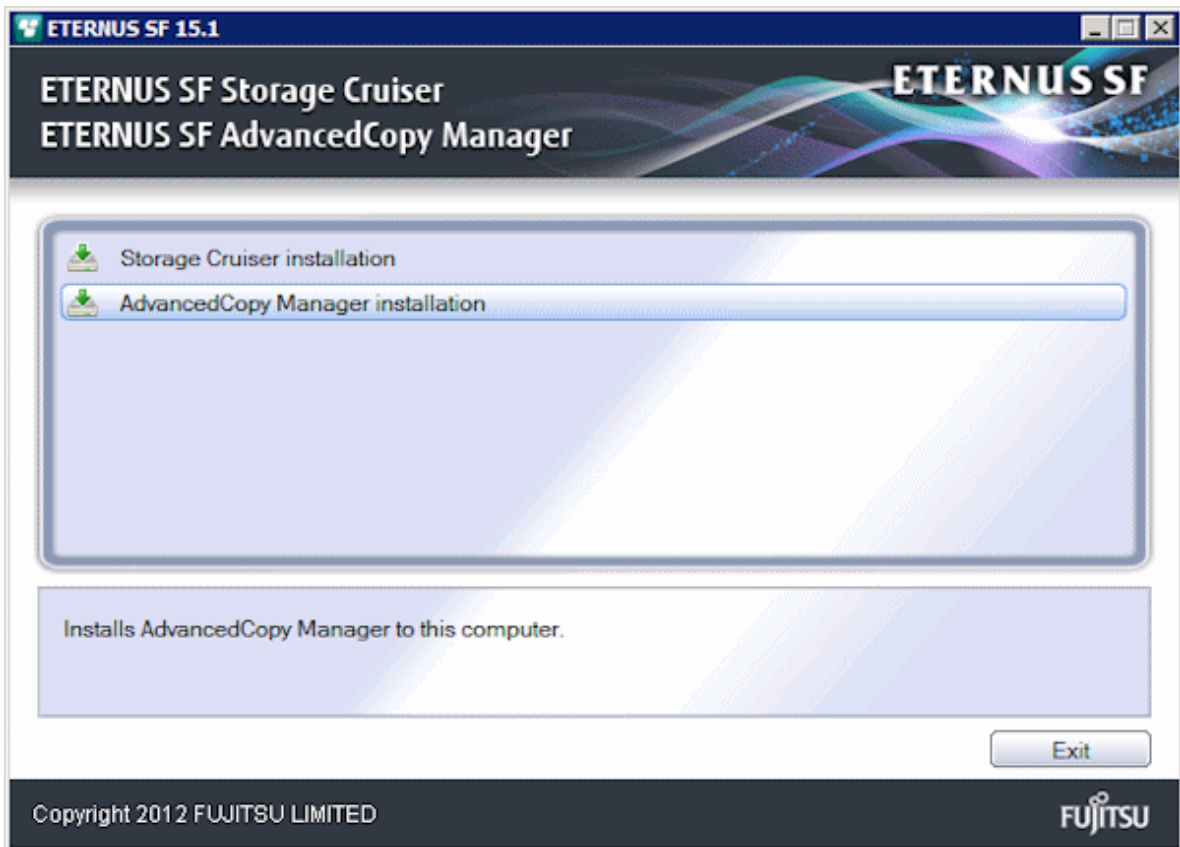
- For "AdvancedCopy Manager (x86) - Agent" :
32 bit AdvancedCopy Manager's agent is installed.
- For "AdvancedCopy Manager (x64) - Agent" :
64 bit AdvancedCopy Manager's agent is installed.

3. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

4. The following screen is displayed.

For the Upgrade Installation process, this screen is not used. Click the [Exit] button to exit the screen.



5. Start the following installer corresponding to the architecture of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent checked in Step 2.

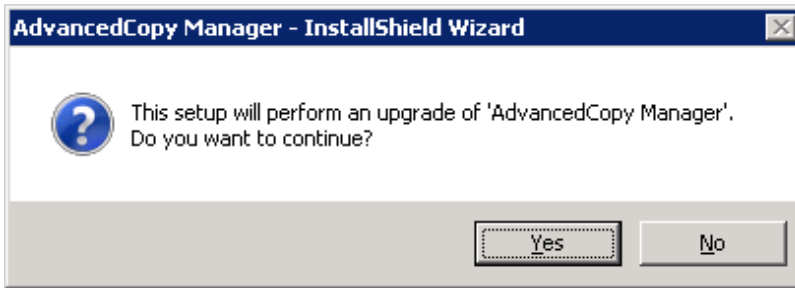
- For 32 bit version:

<DVD-ROM drive>:\Agent_windows\AdvancedCopy_Manager\agent\windows_x86\setup.exe

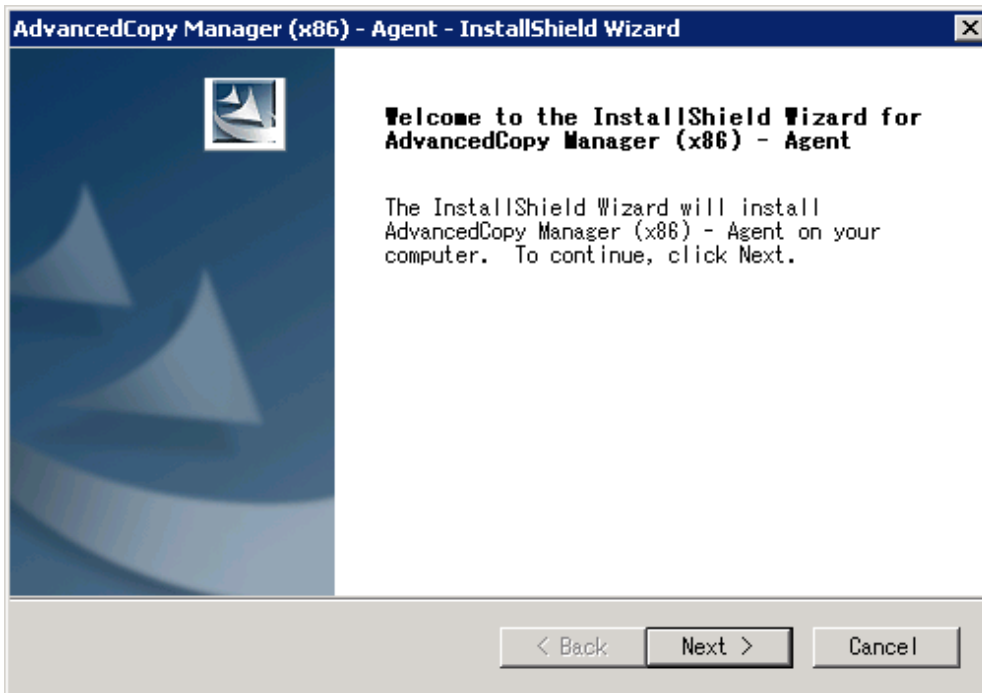
- For 64 bit version:

<DVD-ROM drive>:\Agent_windows\AdvancedCopy_Manager\agent\windows_x64\setup.exe

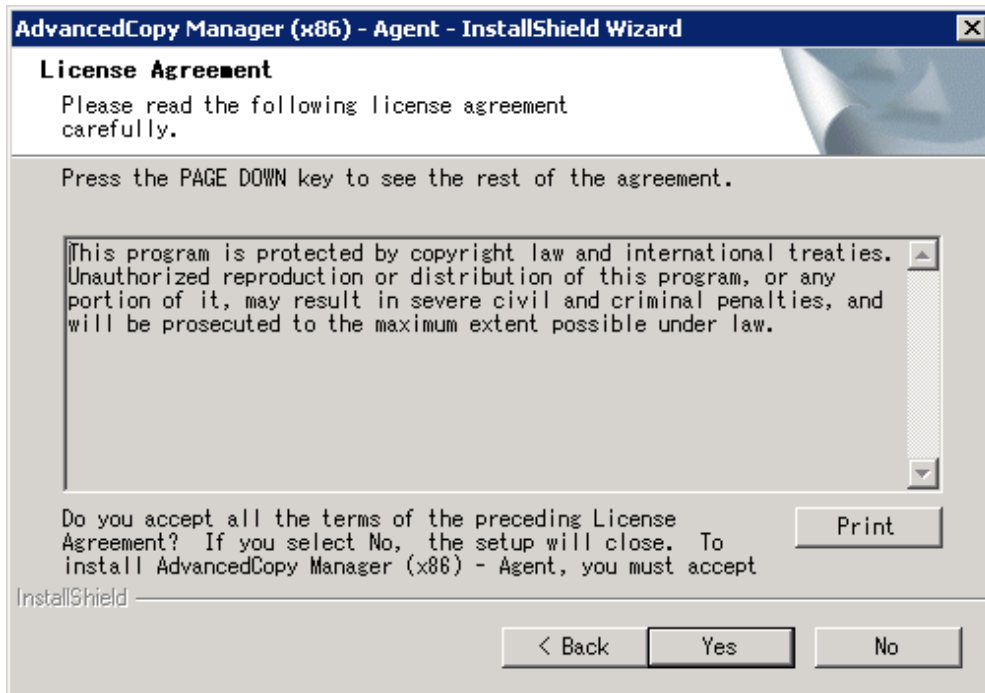
6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Yes] button.



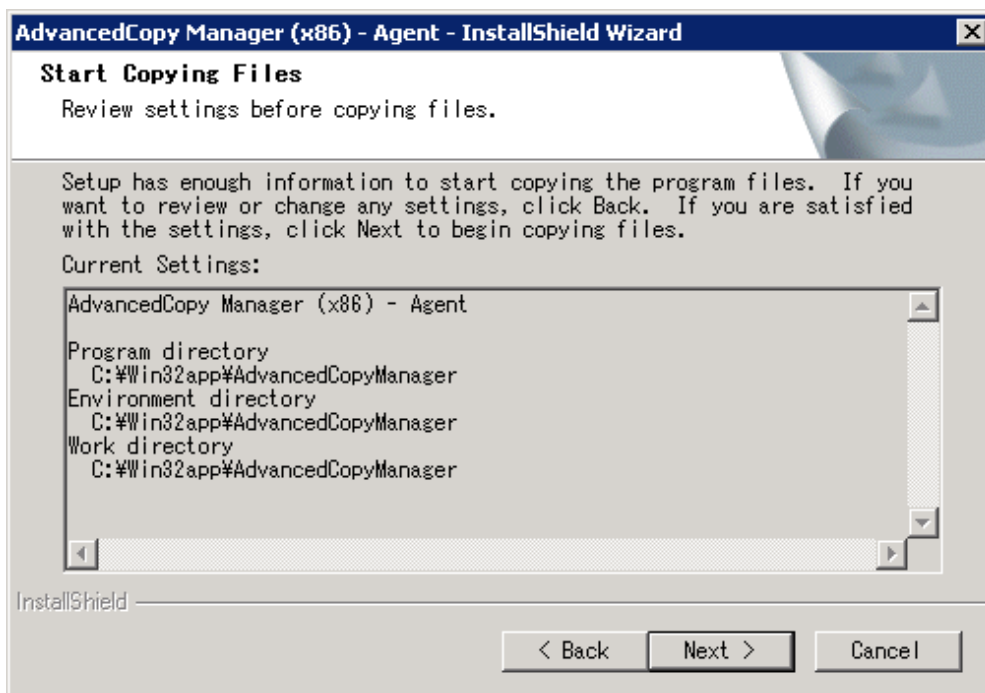
7. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.



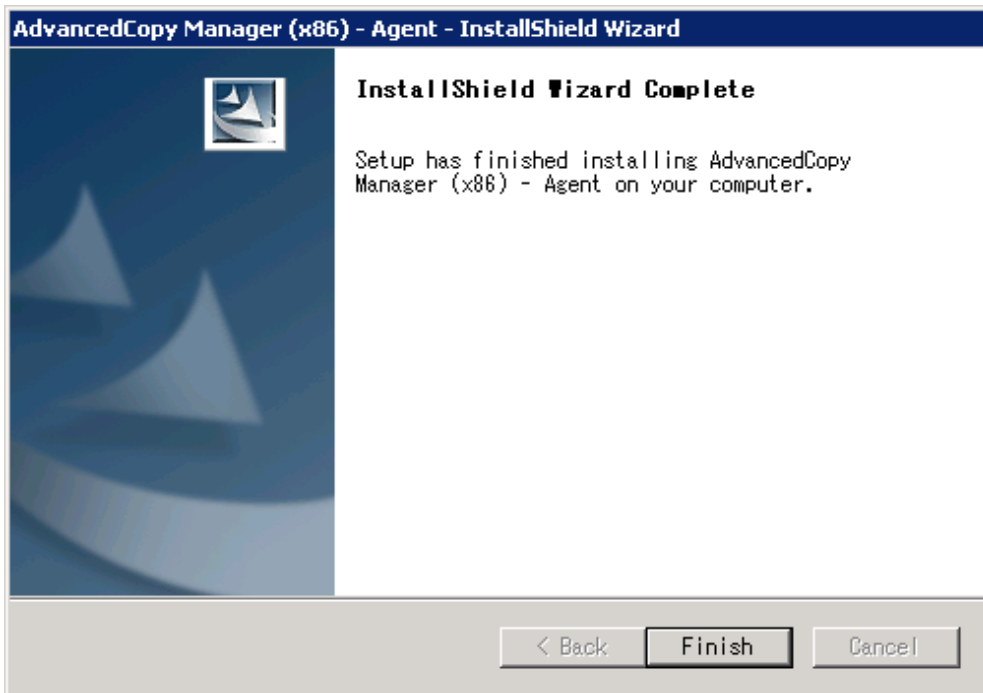
8. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.
After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



9. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen. If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.



10. Copying the program is started.
Once the processing ends, the following screen is displayed. Finish the installation by clicking [Finish] button.



11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.3.1.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (for Windows Server 2008 environment)

After the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent, perform the following procedure.

1. Start the service of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Start] button.

2. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Managed Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

This command is to be performed on the Management Server.

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

8.3.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of cluster operation:

8.3.2.1 Before installation

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent for Windows:

1. Check that Managed Server transactions are stopped in the secondary server.
If the Managed Server transactions are not stopped, use Failover Cluster Manager in the secondary node to stop the Managed Server transactions included in ETERNUS SF Manager.
If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each secondary node for Managed Server transactions.
2. Stop the Managed Server transaction in the primary node.
Use Failover Cluster Manager to stop the Managed Server transactions.
However, leave the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions online.
If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each primary node for Managed Server transaction.
3. Stop the local transactions on all the nodes.
Perform the following procedure
 1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
 2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Stop] button.
4. Backup the environment and data.
 - Backup the Windows system in the primary and secondary nodes.
 - Backup the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions in the primary node.
 - If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, backup the shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions in each the primary node for Managed Server transactions.

Point

.....

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, be sure to back up the following before the Upgrade Installation process.

- Windows system
- Shared disk for shared data of Managed Server transactions

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

.....

8.3.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent running in the primary node:

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each primary node for Managed Server transactions.

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Check the architecture of installed AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Select [Control Panel] -> [Add or Remove Programs] to check the architecture of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

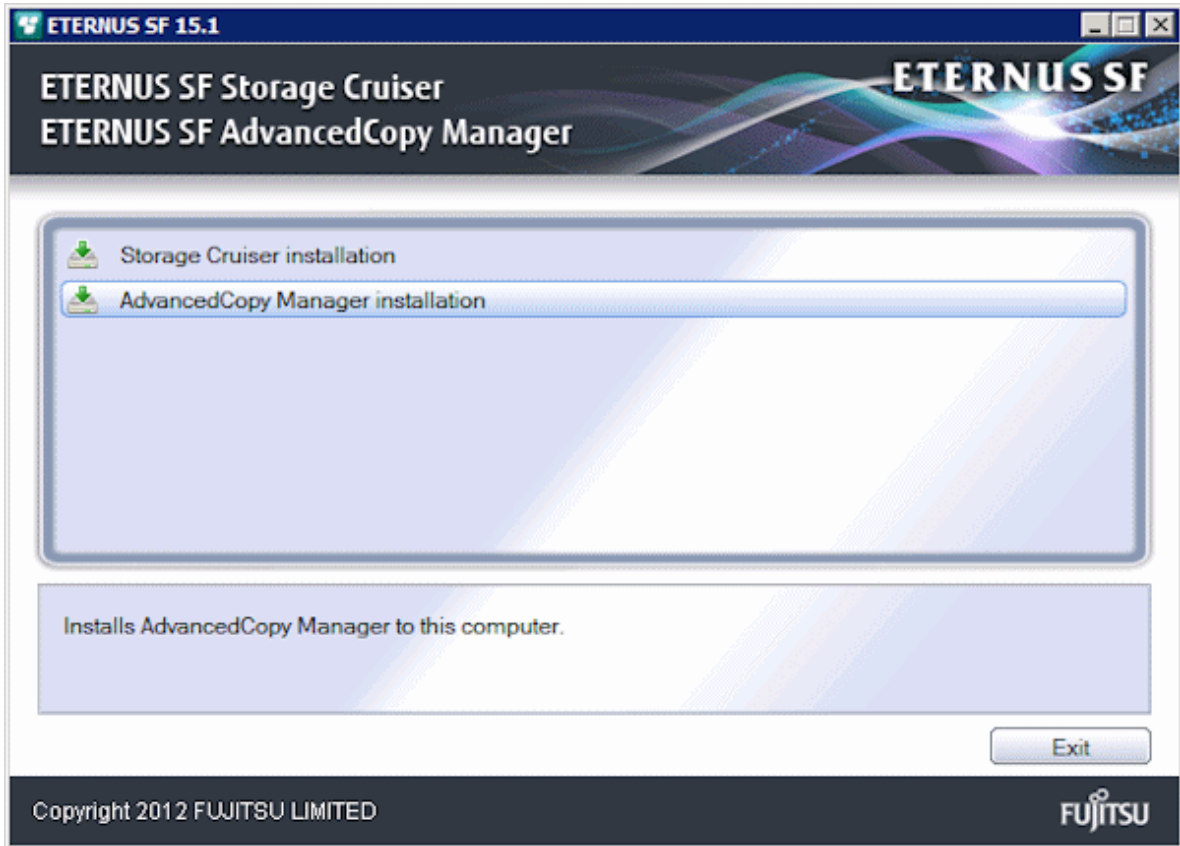
- For "AdvancedCopy Manager (x86) - Agent" :
32 bit AdvancedCopy Manager's agent is installed.
- For "AdvancedCopy Manager (x64) - Agent" :
64 bit AdvancedCopy Manager's agent is installed.

3. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

4. The following screen is displayed.

For the Upgrade Installation process, this screen is not used. Click the [Exit] button to exit the screen.



5. Start the following installer corresponding to the architecture of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent checked in Step 2.

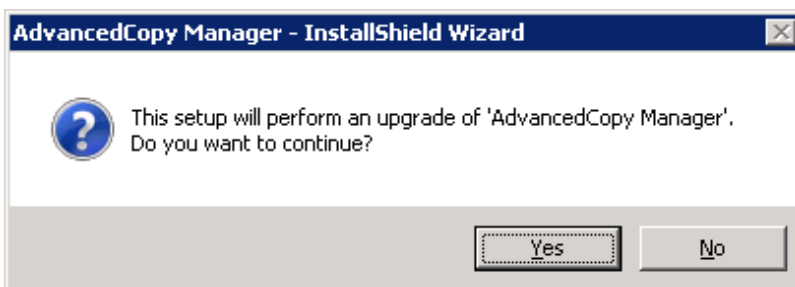
- For 32 bit version:

<DVD-ROM drive>:\Agent_windows\AdvancedCopy_Manager\agent\windows_x86\setup.exe

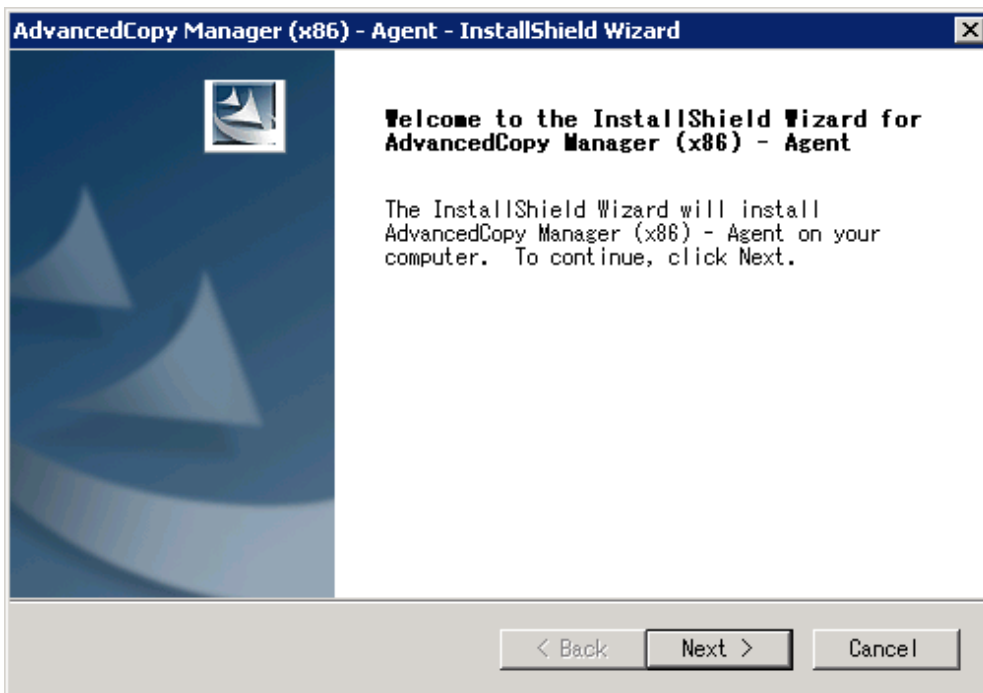
- For 64 bit version:

<DVD-ROM drive>:\Agent_windows\AdvancedCopy_Manager\agent\windows_x64\setup.exe

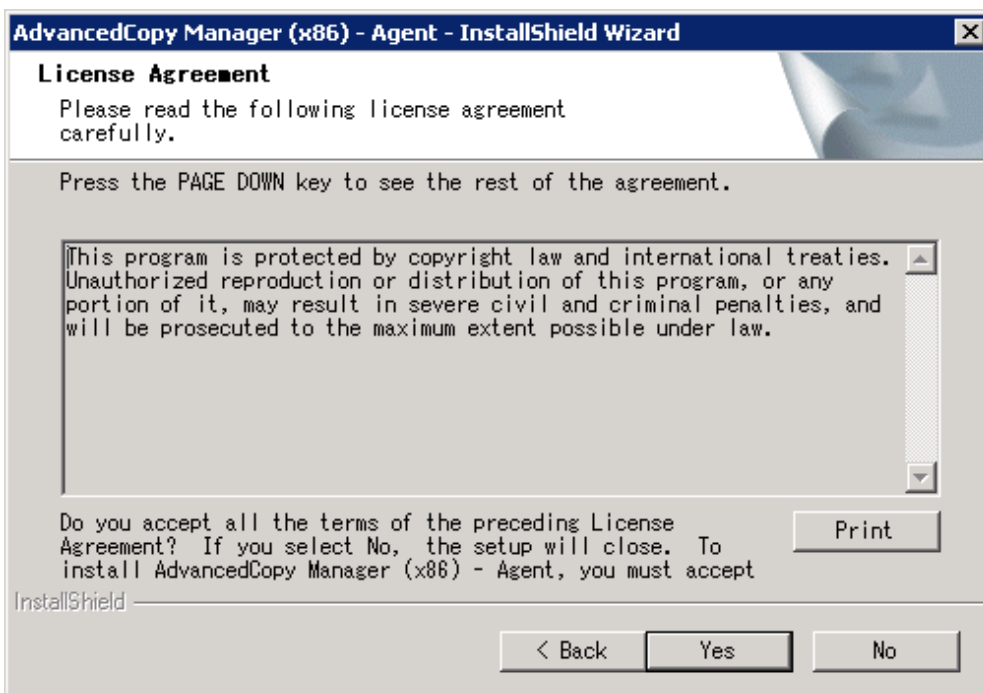
6. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Yes] button.



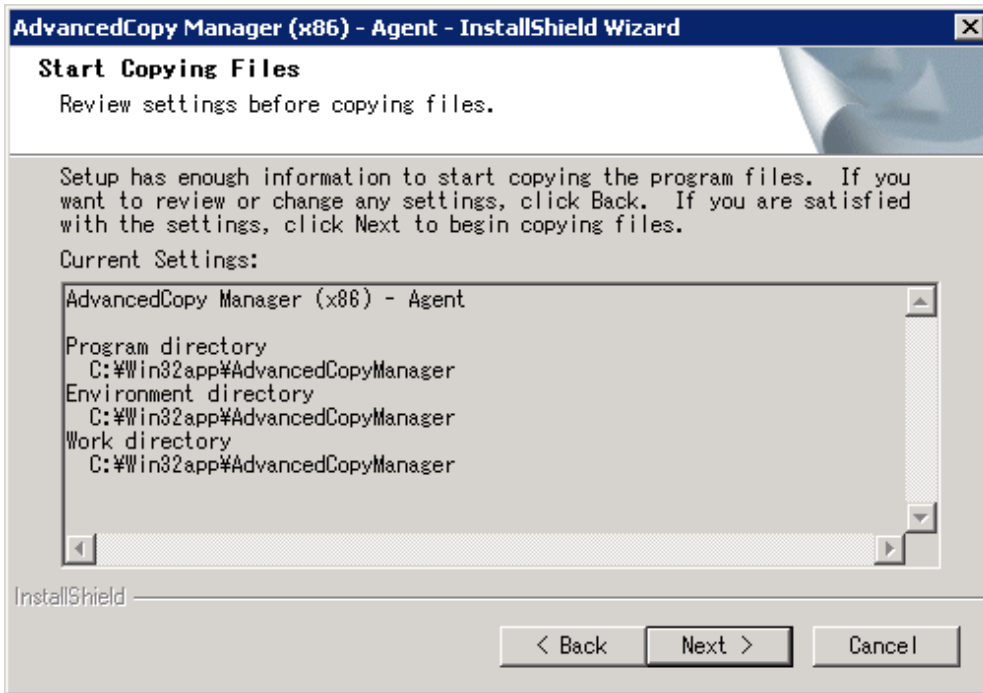
7. The following screen is displayed. After checking the screen contents, click the [Next] button.



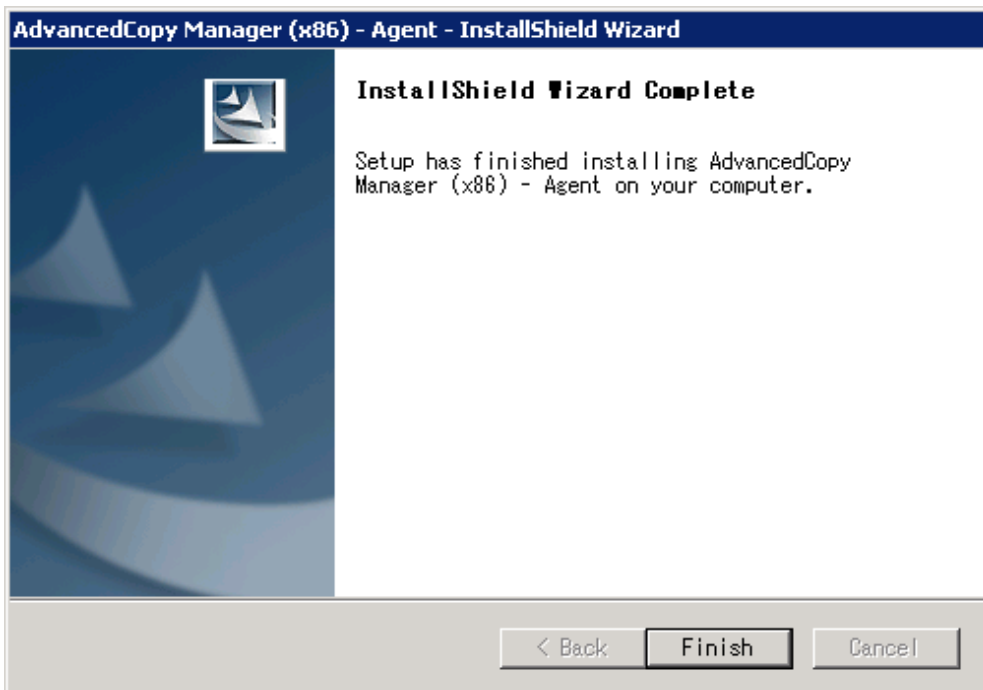
8. Read the terms and conditions in the [License Agreement] screen.
After reading the contents, if the conditions are agreeable click the [Yes] button.



9. Check the settings information in the [Start Copying Files] screen. If the settings are correct, click the [Next] button.



10. Copying the program is started. Once the processing ends, the following screen is displayed. Finish the installation by clicking [Finish] button.



11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.3.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent running in the primary node, the following procedure needs to be performed :

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, use this procedure in each primary node for Managed Server transaction.

Edit the environment setting files for Managed Server transaction on the shared disk for shared data.
 Edit the following files:

- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transaction shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\clsetup.ini
- <Drive letter of shared disk for Managed Server transaction shared data>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\swstg.ini

Change the Version information within each file to the post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the Version information	Post-replacement the Version information
Version=V15.0	Version=V15.1

Note

Do not change anything other than the Version line.

8.3.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node)

Perform the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is the same as that in the primary node. Refer to the "[8.3.2.2 Upgrade Installation \(Primary Node\)](#)".

Point

If this secondary node as a primary node for other Managed Server transactions, it performs the Upgrade Installation process as a primary node, so this procedure is not needed.

8.3.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)

There is no further required procedure after the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node.

8.3.2.6 Start Managed Server transaction

After the Upgrade Installation process, perform the following procedure.

1. Start the Managed Server transactions in the primary node.

Use Failover Cluster Manager to start the Managed Server transactions.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.

2. Start the local transactions on all the nodes.

Perform the following procedure.

1. Click [Control Panel] -> [Administrative Tools] -> [Services] to display the [Services] screen.
2. Select "AdvancedCopy Manager COM Service" and click the [Start] button.

3. Change the server information for Managed Server transactions.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Managed Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command).

This command is to be performed on the Management Server.

If multiple Managed Server transactions exist, apply this procedure for each Managed Server transaction.

In addition, if there is any node that is running local transactions, perform this procedure in the relevant node.

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

8.4 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Windows Server 2003 environment, Solaris, Linux)

The following shows the upgrade procedure for AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

1. [8.4.1 Backup of repository data](#)
2. [8.4.2 Backup of the management information](#)
3. [8.4.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database \(for Windows Server 2003 environment\)](#)
4. [8.4.4 Uninstallation of the previous version](#)
5. [8.4.5 Installation of this version](#)
6. [8.4.6 Restoration of repository data](#)
7. [8.4.7 Changing server information](#)
8. [8.4.8 Restoration of the management information](#)
9. [8.4.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database \(for Windows Server 2003 environment\)](#)
10. [8.4.10 Updating the version information](#)

8.4.1 Backup of repository data

Back up the repository data by referring to the following sections on the Management Server. (Only when the Managed Server is operated in a cluster configuration)

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows Server 2003	A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)

8.4.2 Backup of the management information

Back up the management information on the Managed Server by referring to the following table.

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows Server 2003	A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)
HP-UX AIX	A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

8.4.3 Releasing of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows Server 2003 environment)

When the backup and the restoration function of the Exchange Database are used, release the setting in reference to the manual of the previous version level.

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Database in a Windows Server 2003 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Stopping backup copy process
- Delete the copy set of the hardware provider
- Delete source and replica volumes
- Cancel the hardware provider registration

8.4.4 Uninstallation of the previous version

Uninstall the previous version level in reference to the relevant previous version manual.

In the case of non-cluster operation



.....
In the course of the following procedures, be careful not to perform the procedure "Deletion of all Managed Servers".
.....

- For Windows Server 2003 environment:
Perform the "Uninstallation procedure of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Windows)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".
- For Solaris, Linux, HP-UX and AIX environments:
Perform the procedures following "Stopping services/daemons" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide".

In the case of cluster operation

If cluster operations are used for Managed Servers as Managed Server transactions, it is necessary to perform the un-setup of cluster settings before performing uninstallation.



.....
For procedures for the un-setup of cluster settings, refer to "Deletion of Cluster Environment for Managed Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for the previous version.
.....

8.4.5 Installation of this version

Install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent of this version, and setup the operating environment.

About installation

- In the case of non-cluster operation:

Refer to "Installation of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level, and install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

- In the case of cluster operation:

Refer to "Installation of ETERNUS SF Agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level, and install the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

However, if the system environment is Linux 5 for Intel64, in Step 3 of "Installation procedure of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent (for Linux)" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide", select the installation directory that is stated for "OS type - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64), not using the Symfoware linkage function", even if you are actually using the Symfoware linkage function.

Setting up the operating environment

- In the case of non-cluster operation:

Refer to "Setup of AdvancedCopy Manager's agent" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level, and setup the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

Afterwards, start the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent on the Managed Server. For the start procedure, refer to "Starting and Stopping Daemons" or "Starting and Stopping Services" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Managed Server.

- In the case of cluster operation:

Refer to "Customization of Managed Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for this version level, and setup the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent.

8.4.6 Restoration of repository data

Restore the backed up repository data on the Management Server. (Only when the Managed Server is operated in a cluster configuration)

Execute stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command) to restore the repository data and then convert it for use with the current version of the repository.



For restoration of the repository data, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



For details on the command, refer to "stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

8.4.7 Changing server information

To ensure data consistency, use the Web Console or stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

If executing stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command), specify the Managed Server name to the -n option. Also, this command is to be performed on the Management Server.

Note

For changing the server information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.

See

For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.

8.4.8 Restoration of the management information

Restore the management information on the Managed Server by referring to the following table.

OS type of Managed Server	Reference
Windows Server 2003	A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)
Solaris Linux	A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)
HP-UX AIX	A.13 Restore of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

8.4.9 Setting of backup and Restore in Exchange Database (for Windows Server 2003 environment)

Reconfigure the backup and restoration functions of the Exchange database for which the setting has been released in reference to the manual of this version level.

"Backup and Restore of an Exchange Database in a Windows Server 2003 Environment" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Windows)", Please do the following.

- Registration of provider
- Configuring the source volume and replica volume
- Registering the hardware provider copy set
- Registering database information

8.4.10 Updating the version information

If not using cluster operation, and moreover, if the restoration of repository data has already been performed with the restoration of the replication management list, use the Web Console or stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command) to update the version information for the Managed Server.

If executing stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command), specify the Managed Server name to the -n option. Also, this command is to be performed on the Management Server.

Note

For updating the version information, start a new window for command execution, and then perform the procedure on the window.



See

- For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" relevant to the OS of the Management Server.
- For details about reloading the server information using Web Console, refer to "Reload the server configuration information" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide".

8.5 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Windows)

This section explains the upgrade procedures for the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for Windows.

If only AdvancedCopy Manager CCM is installed to use, take the procedure mentioned in this section to perform the Upgrade Installation process.

If ETERNUS SF Manager is installed and AdvancedCopy Manager CCM is used, refer to the "[8.1 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager's manager \(for Windows\)](#)" to perform the Upgrade Installation process.



Note

In the Windows Server 2003 environment, using the procedure mentioned below cannot perform the Upgrade Installation process. When upgrading versions in the Windows Server 2003 environment, take the following procedure:

1. Uninstall the before version product.
2. If Symfoware Server included in AdvancedCopy Manager is being used, take the following step:
Use the [Add or Remove Programs] screen or the [Programs and Features] screen to uninstall Symfoware.
If you have installed both Symfoware Server and Symfoware Server Client, uninstall Symfoware Server Client first.
3. Install this version level of product.

8.5.1 Upgrade Installation for non-cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of non-cluster operation:

8.5.1.1 Before installation (for Windows)

Backup the Windows system before starting the Upgrade Installation process for the AdvancedCopy Manager CCM for Windows.



Point

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, backup the Windows system before performing the Upgrade Installation process.

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.

8.5.1.2 Upgrade Installation (for Windows)

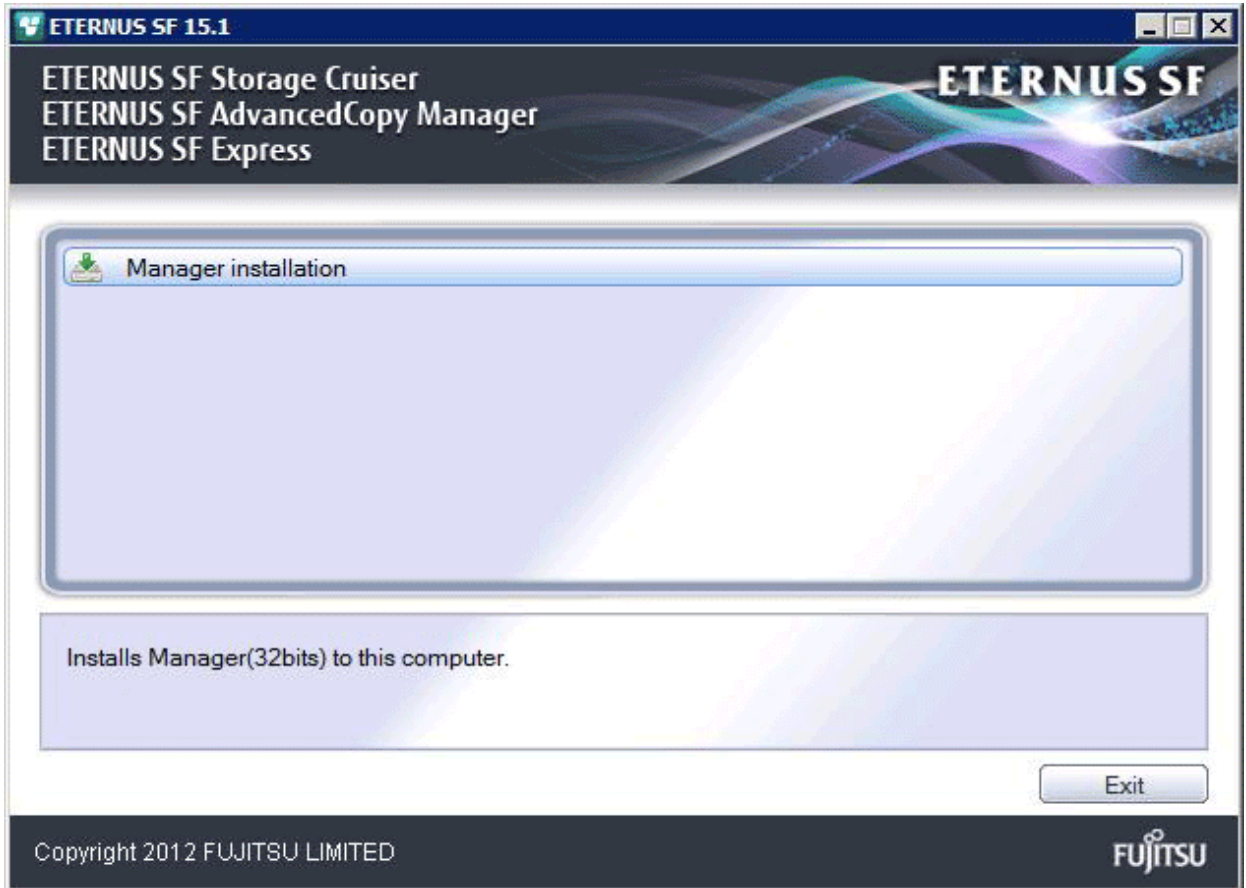
The Upgrade Installation procedure is performed as follows:

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.

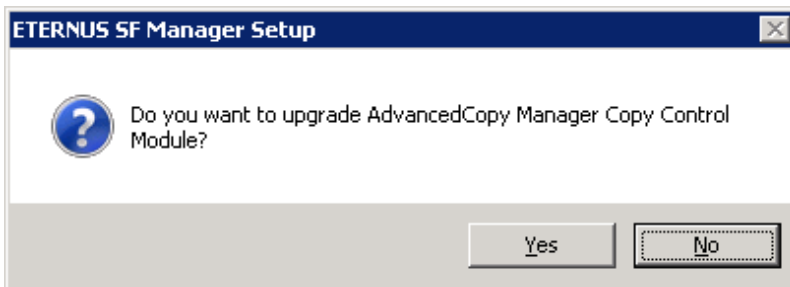
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

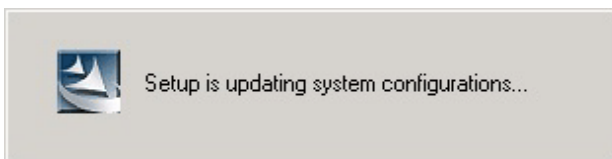
3. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



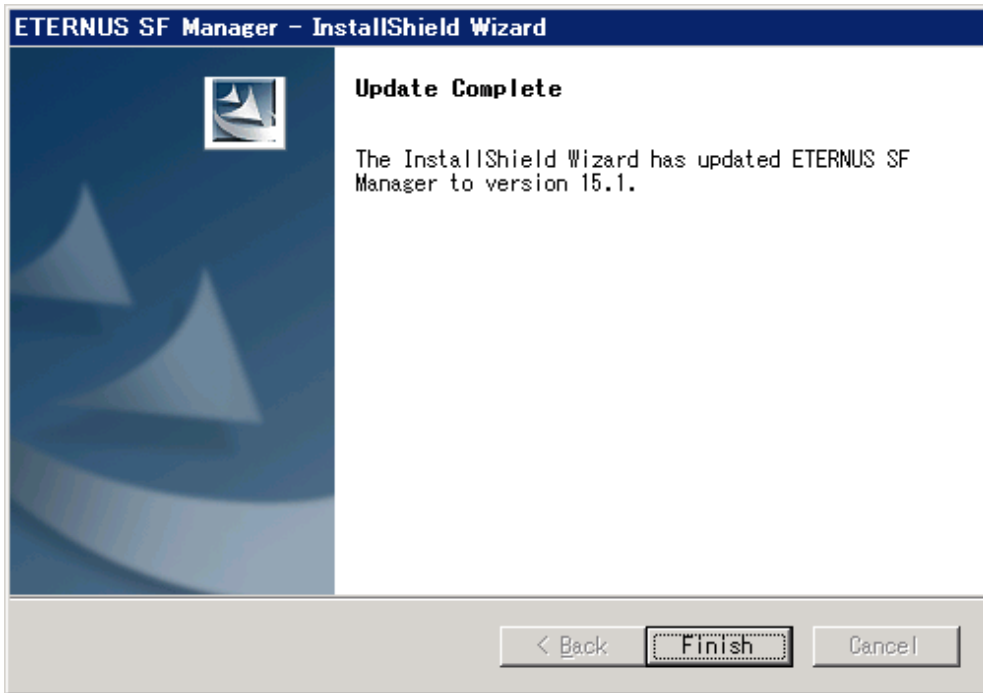
4. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



5. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish



6. The following screen is displayed. The Upgrade Installation process is finished, click the [Finish] button.



7. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.5.2 Upgrade Installation for cluster operation

The following is a description of the Upgrade Installation procedure in the case of cluster operation:

The following values are used in the description:

Value	Description
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

8.5.2.1 Before installation

In the case of cluster operation, the following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation process for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for Windows:

1. Check that the CCM Server transactions are stopped in the secondary node.
If the CCM Server transactions are not stopped, use Failover Cluster Manager in the secondary node to stop the transactions included in AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.
2. Stop the CCM Server transactions in the primary node.
Use Failover Cluster Manager to stop the transactions included in AdvancedCopy Manager CCM. However, place online the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.
3. Backup the environment and data.
 - Backup the Windows system in the primary and secondary nodes.
 - Backup the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data in the primary node.

Point

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, you cannot return the environment to the pre-installation status (rollback).

For this reason, be sure to back up the following before the Upgrade Installation process.

- Windows system
- Shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data

If any failure occurs during the Upgrade Installation process, restore the system from backup.



8.5.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)

The following shows the upgrade procedure in the primary node.

1. Using an account with Administrator privileges, log in the server where the upgrade will be performed.
2. Save the environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : `$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties`

Copy it to any directory other than the installation destination directory for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.
The saved file is used for post-Upgrade Installation process.

3. Restore the original environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM (sys.properties).

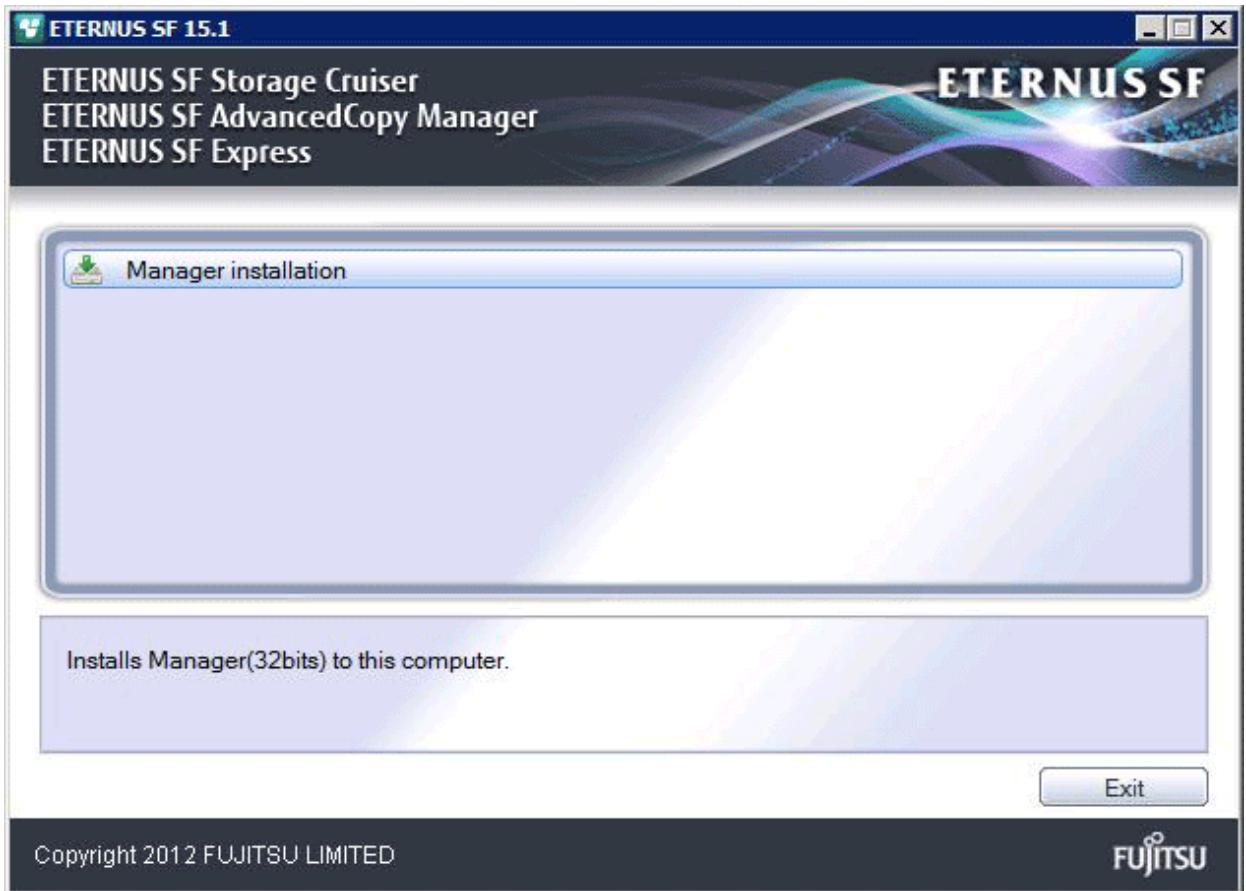
Overwrite the original environment setting file to the copy destination file.

Original environment setting file	Copy destination file
<code>\$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\sys\sys.properties</code>	<code>\$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties</code>

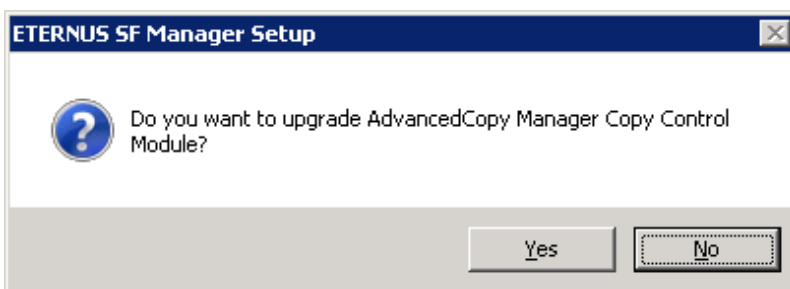
4. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Windows (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

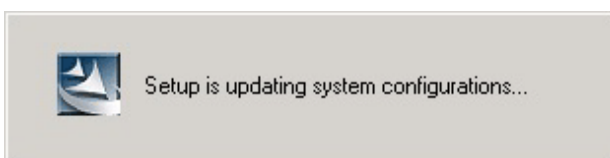
5. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Manager installation] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [Exit] button.



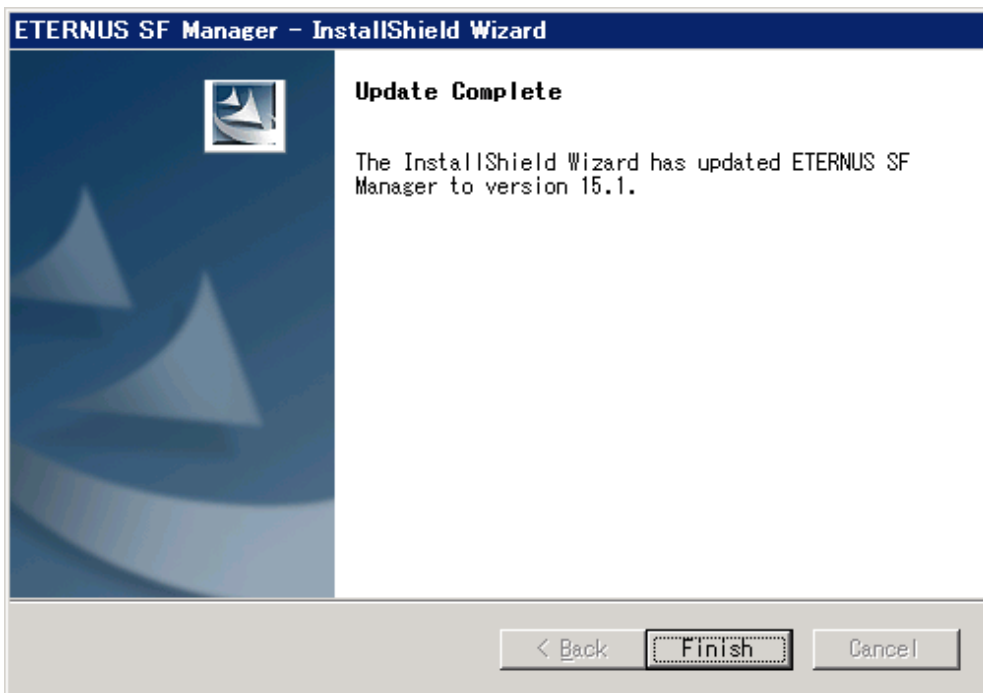
6. The following screen is displayed. Click the [Yes] button.
To cancel the Upgrade Installation at this point, click the [No] button.



7. The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



- The system configuration is updated. Wait for the configuration update process to finish.



- Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

8.5.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Primary Node)

After the Upgrade Installation process in the primary node, perform the following procedure.

- Restore the environment setting file (sys.properties) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Write the environment setting file (sys.properties) saved in Step 2 of "8.5.2.2 Upgrade Installation (Primary Node)" over the following file after the Upgrade Installation process:

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : `$INS_DIR\CCM\sys\sys.properties`

- Edit the environment setting file (.install.sys) for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

Environment setting file for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM : `$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys`

Change the stxs_etcdir information within the file to post-replacement string.

Pre-replacement the stxs_etcdir information	Post-replacement the stxs_etcdir information
<code>stxs_etcdir=<i>Upgrading directory</i></code>	<code>stxs_etcdir=<i>Upgraded directory</i></code> (Note)

Note : Specify the value of stxs_etcdir set to the following file for the *Upgraded directory*.

`$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys`

Note

- Do not change anything other than the stxs_etcdir line in the `$INS_DIR\CCM\micc\sys\.install.sys` file.
- For the `$INS_DIR\CCM\noncluster\micc\sys\.install.sys` file, refer to it only, but do not edit it.

8.5.2.4 Upgrade Installation (Secondary Node)

Perform the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node.

The Upgrade Installation procedure is the same as that in the primary node. Refer to the "[8.5.2.2 Upgrade Installation \(Primary Node\)](#)".

8.5.2.5 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks (Secondary Node)

The required procedure after performing the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node is the same as that in the primary node. Refer to "[8.5.2.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks \(Primary Node\)](#)".

8.5.2.6 Start CCM Server transactions

After the Upgrade Installation process, start CCM Server transactions.

Use Failover Cluster Manager in the primary node to start the transactions included in AdvancedCopy Manager CCM.

8.6 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module (for Solaris, Linux)

This section explains the upgrade procedures for the AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for Solaris and Linux.

If only AdvancedCopy Manager CCM is installed to use, take the procedure mentioned in this section to perform the Upgrade Installation process.

If ETERNUS SF Manager is installed and AdvancedCopy Manager CCM is used, refer to the "[8.2 Upgrade for AdvancedCopy Manager \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)" to perform the Upgrade Installation process.

8.6.1 Before installation (for Solaris, Linux)

The following preparation work must be done before starting the Upgrade Installation for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module for Solaris and Linux.

8.6.1.1 Backup of the environment setting files

Back up the operational environment for the previous version level.



See

.....
For details about the backup method, refer to "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".
.....

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, backup the definition of the license information.

Backup the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm backup command. For details of esflm backup command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version level.

Example of executing esflm backup command is as below. The file specified with *<file_name>* will be created as a backup file.

```
> esflm backup <file_name>
Backup of license database was performed successfully
```

8.6.1.2 Available disk space verification

Make sure that there is enough available disk space on the server where the Upgrade Installation will be performed.

The required disk space for the upgrade is calculated as the required disk space for the new version to be installed minus the required disk space of the previous version.

Amount of space required for this version level

The required amount of space for installing ETERNUS SF Manager program or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program. Refer to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the required amount of space.

- For using AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module in ETERNUS SF Manager program

"Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager"

- For installing AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program

"Operating environment of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM"

Amount of space required for the previous version level

The required amount of space for installing ETERNUS SF Manager program or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program of the previous version level.

Refer to the following parts in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for the previous version level about the required amount of space.

- For using AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module in ETERNUS SF Manager program

"Operating environment of ETERNUS SF Manager"

- For installing AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module program

"Operating environment of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM"

8.6.2 Upgrade Installation (for Solaris, Linux)

There are two methods of performing the Upgrade Installation for Solaris and Linux.

In case of non-cluster operation



Point

.....

There is no need to modify the install parameter file for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

For details on the install parameter file, refer to "[B.3 Install parameter file \(for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module\)](#)".

.....

1. Log in the server where the upgrade will be performed as root.
2. Insert the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level into the DVD-ROM drive.

For details on the DVD-ROM structure and detailed contents, refer to "DVD-ROM contents" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

3. Mount the DVD-ROM. If the drive is automount, this step is not necessary.

Example:

```
# mount /mnt/dvd
```


4. Change the directory on the DVD-ROM where the installation shell script is stored.

Example:

```
# cd /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix
```

5. Specify the install parameter file and execute the installation shell script.

Though the install parameter file exists in the same directory as the installation shell script, it must be specified by using the absolute path name.

Example:

```
# ./esfinstall.sh -s /mnt/dvd/Manager_unix/install_parameter_ccm.txt
```

6. The installation information is displayed with a confirmation message. To continue with the installation, enter "y". To cancel at this point, enter "q". Hit the enter key to proceed.

```
+-----+
|                ETERNUS SF V15.1                |
|  All Rights Reserved, Copyright (C) FUJITSU LIMITED 2012  |
+-----+

Installation_function:  ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager CCM

Do you want to continue the installation? [y,q]:
```

7. The following message asks for confirmation before uninstalling the previous version. To uninstall the previous version and proceed with the new version installation, type "y". To cancel installation process, type "q". Hit the Enter key.

```
An old version is installed in this system.
Do you want to remove old version from this system? [y,q]:
```

Point

.....

For the inquiry for uninstalling of the previous version, type "y" so as to continue the uninstallation.

When the uninstalling is cancelled, the Upgrade Installation is interrupted. When re-executing the installation after restart the computer, the installation is treated as new one.

.....

8. If the installation completes successfully, the following message is displayed.

```
INFO: ETERNUS SF was installed successfully.
```

9. Change to a directory outside of the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# cd
```

10. Unmount the DVD-ROM.

Example:

```
# umount /mnt/dvd
```

11. Eject the DVD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive.

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module ends at this point. Perform the "8.6.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks" afterwards.

In case of cluster operation

1. Perform cluster unsetup.
For the cluster unsetup procedure, refer to "Deletion of Cluster Environments for CCM Server Transactions" in the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide" for the previous version.
2. Perform the Upgrade Installation process in the primary node.
For the Upgrade Installation procedure, refer to "[In case of non-cluster operation](#)".
3. Perform the Upgrade Installation process in the secondary node.
For the Upgrade Installation procedure, refer to "[In case of non-cluster operation](#)".
4. Perform cluster setup.
For the cluster setup procedure, refer to "Customization for CCM Server Transactions" in this version level of the "ETERNUS SF Cluster Environment Setup Guide".

The Upgrade Installation of the Solaris and Linux versions of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module ends at this point. Perform the "[8.6.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks](#)" afterwards in the primary node.

8.6.3 Post-Upgrade Installation tasks

This explains the operations that should be done after performing the Upgrade Installation.

8.6.3.1 Restore of the environment setting files

Restore the environment setup file backed up in "[8.6.1.1 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".



See

.....
For the restoration procedure, refer to "[A.14 Restore of the environment setting files](#)".
.....

License information

When AdvancedCopy Manager and/or AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module are installed, restore the definition of the license information.

Restore the license management database of ETERNUS SF License Manager by using esflm restore command. For details of esflm restore command, refer to the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Example of executing esflm restore command is as below. The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
> esflm restore <file_name>
Restoration of license database was performed successfully
```

8.6.3.2 Reconfiguration of device information

The following procedure is required to reconfigure the ETERNUS Disk storage system information.

For details on the commands, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

1. Confirm the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray list (ETERNUS Disk storage system information display command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray list
```

Name	BOX-ID	IP Address
E4000	00E4000M3#####E450S20A####KD4030639004##	10.124.6.251
E8000	00E8000M9#####E890S20A####KO4070639003##	10.124.6.241

2. Confirm the detail information of the registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray detail (ETERNUS Disk storage system detail information display command)".

```
C:\>acarray detail -a E4000

Disk Array Name : E4000
BOX-ID          : 00E4000M3#####E450S20A####KD4030639004##
IP Address      : 10.124.6.251
Admin User      : ****
Access Volume   : X:

C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray detail -a E8000

Disk Array Name : E8000
BOX-ID          : 00E8000M9#####E890S20A####KO4070639003##
IP Address      : 10.124.6.241
Admin User      : ****
Access Volume   : Y:
```

3. Remove all o registered ETERNUS Disk storage system by using "acarray remove (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration information deletion command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray remove -a E4000
Successful completion.

C:\>acarray remove -a E8000
Successful completion.
```

4. Re-register all of ETERNUS Disk storage systems that were removed in step 3 by using "acarray add (ETERNUS Disk storage system registration command)".

```
C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a E4000 -ip 10.124.6.251 -user **** -password **** -path X:
Successful completion.

C:\>C:\ETERNUS_SF\CCM\bin\acarray add -a E8000 -ip 10.124.6.241 -user **** -password **** -path Y:
Successful completion.
```

Point

When the ETERNUS Disk storage system was registered by specifying nonexistent drive letter or device name in the previous version of AdvancedCopy Manager CCM, re-register its ETERNUS Disk storage system as a remote device.

8.6.3.3 License registration

Register the appropriate licenses.

See

Refer to "License Management" in the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level about the license settings.

8.6.4 Resuming operations

Upon completion of the tasks above, Upgrade Installation and setup of AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module is complete. Restart the operation.

Chapter 9 Troubleshooting

This chapter describes the method for troubleshooting if a problem occurs during the Upgrade Installation process.

The troubleshooting method differs according to the way the upgrade fails. Please use the appropriate method according to the problem type.

In case of a problem during the uninstallation of the previous version:

After the problem has been diagnosed and solved, restart the Upgrade Installation process from the beginning.

Point

- When an error message is displayed, refer to the following manuals for the previous version level, and perform the action for relevant message.

- For the previous version is Version 13.x or 14.x:

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"Messages" in the "ETERNUS SF Express User's Guide"
Storage Cruiser	"ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Message Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager	"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Message Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	"Messages for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide for Copy Control Module"

- For the previous version is Version 15.x:

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"ETERNUS SF Messages"
Storage Cruiser	
AdvancedCopy Manager	
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	

- When no error message is displayed, refer to the following manuals for the previous version level, to collect the troubleshooting information and then contact your Fujitsu system engineer.

- For the previous version is Version 13.x or 14.x:

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"Trouble analysis" in the "ETERNUS SF Express User's Guide" for the previous version level
Storage Cruiser	"Troubleshooting information" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser User's Guide" for the previous version level
AdvancedCopy Manager	"Collecting maintenance information" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" for the previous version level
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	"How to Collect Data" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide for Copy Control Module" for the previous version level

- For the previous version is Version 15.x:

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"Trouble analysis" in the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide"
Storage Cruiser	"Troubleshooting information" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager	"Collecting maintenance information" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	"How to collect data" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module"

In case of a problem during the installation of this version:

The uninstallation of the previous version has succeeded.

After the installation problem has been diagnosed and solved, install this version by referring to the "ETERNUS SF Installation and Setup Guide" for this version level.

Point

- When an error message is displayed, refer to the following manuals for this version level, and perform the action for relevant message.

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"ETERNUS SF Messages"
Storage Cruiser	
AdvancedCopy Manager	
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	

- When no error message is displayed, refer to the following manuals for this version level, to collect the troubleshooting information and then contact your Fujitsu system engineer.

Target for upgrade	Reference
Express	"Trouble analysis" in the "ETERNUS SF Express Operation Guide"
Storage Cruiser	"Troubleshooting information" in the "ETERNUS SF Storage Cruiser Operation Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager	"Collecting maintenance information" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide"
AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module	"How to collect data" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module"

Chapter 10 Configuration import

This chapter describes the configuration import.

Point

The configuration import is required only for Version 13.x and 14.x.

10.1 Devices supported by the configuration import command

The devices supported by the configuration import command are listed in the following table.

- Storage devices

Type	Device name	Notes
Disk array devices	ETERNUS DX60/DX60 S2/DX80/DX80 S2/DX90/DX90 S2 ETERNUS DX400/DX400 S2 series ETERNUS DX8000/DX8000 S2 series ETERNUS2000 ETERNUS4000 ETERNUS8000	Automatic registration only
Fibre channel switches	ETERNUS SN200 series (except model 250M) ETERNUS SN200 MDS Brocade Fibre Channel switches McDATA Fibre Channel switches PRIMEGRY Fibre Channel switch blades	Automatic registration only
Tape library	ETERNUS LT250 ETERNUS LT270	Automatic registration only
	ETERNUS LT20/LT20 S2 ETERNUS LT40/LT40 S2 ETERNUS LT60/LT60 S2 ETERNUS LT200 ETERNUS LT210 ETERNUS LT220 ETERNUS LT230	Manual registration only
Other devices	ETERNUS VS850/VS850 S2 ETERNUS CS800 NetApp FAS Series	Manual registration

- Servers

The migration judge depends on the server configuration of the previous version level. The migration pattern for the previous version level configuration information to this version level is shown below.

Register on the Web Console, if the server cannot be migrated.

- If only Storage Cruiser's agent is registered on the configuration information in the previous version level.

No.	Server type in the previous level	This version level	
		Server type	Function level
1	VMware Host	VMware Host	Storage Cruiser
2	VMware Guest	VMware Guest	No Agent
3	Server registered automatically	Stand -alone	Storage Cruiser

No.	Server type in the previous level	This version level	
		Server type	Function level
4	Server registered manually		No Agent

- If only AdvancedCopy Manager's agent is registered on the configuration information in the previous version level.

No.	Server type in the previous level (Note)	This version level	
		Server type	Function level
1	Storage Management Server	Cannot be migrated	
2	Storage Server	Stand -alone	AdvancedCopy Manager

Note: Listed name is the one used in the previous version level.

- If Storage Cruiser's agent and AdvancedCopy Manager's agent are registered on the configuration information in the previous version level.

No.	Server type in the previous level		This version level	
	Storage Cruiser	AdvancedCopy Manager (Note 1)	Server type	Function level
1	VMware Host	-	VMware Host	Storage Cruiser (Note2)
2	VMware Guest	Storage Management Server	VMware Guest	No Agent
3		Storage Server		- No Agent (VMware Tool is in startup status) - AdvancedCopy Manager (VMware Tool is not started)
4	Server registered automatically	Storage Management Server	Cannot be migrated	
5		Storage Server	Stand -alone	Storage Cruiser AdvancedCopy Manager
6	Server registered manually	Storage Management Server	Stand -alone	No Agent
7		Storage Server		AdvancedCopy Manager
8	Server unregistered	Storage Management Server	Cannot be migrated	
9		Storage Server		

Note 1: Listed name is the one used in the previous version level.

Note 2: In this version level, the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent cannot be registered to a server in which VMware host is registered.

10.2 Command reference

This section explains the command used for importing configuration information from a previous version.

10.2.1 esfimportdevconf (Configuration import command)

Name

esfimportdevconf - import the configuration information from the previous version for the devices in the system.

Format

Windows environment

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\esfimportdevconf
```

(\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.)

Solaris environment, Linux environment

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdevconf
```

Function description

A request for the configuration information from the previous version for the devices in the system is issued to this product. OS Administrator permissions are required in order to execute the command.

When the command is executed, this product starts asynchronously to import and convert the configuration information from the previous version.

Return value

=0 : Normal end

Example of execution

Windows environment

```
> C:\ETERNUS_SF\Common\bin\esfimportdevconf  
escs90000 Operation is accepted.
```

Solaris environment, Linux environment

```
# /opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdevconf  
escs90000 Operation is accepted.
```

Cautions and limitations

- Check that the targeted devices can be accessed from this product before executing the import command.
Refer to "[10.1 Devices supported by the configuration import command](#)" about the devices targeted by the command.
- Some configuration information cannot be imported by the configuration import command.
Refer to "[10.3 What to do when configuration import is not possible](#)" about the alternative options for these configurations.
- Operation is not possible on the targeted devices during the command execution.
- Imported configuration information is based on the configuration information that was registered in the previous version. If imported devices do not exist anymore in the new configuration, remove them using the Web Console. To remove a device, refer to the "Delete ETERNUS Disk storage system" from the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.
- Import time for a storage device is approximately 10 minutes. For an estimate of the total import time, do the following calculation:

[Total import time] = number of storage systems x 10 minutes
--

- The result of the import process is output in the Web Console Operation History. To try again to import the devices for which the import process has failed, execute the [Device re-reading] operation after the message has been output in the Operation History.

- Make sure that ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat service is running before executing the configuration information import command. If it is not running, the configuration information cannot be imported but the execution of the command is issued. Restart the ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat service before executing the command again. If the service is not restarted, the message "escs90010 Operation has already been accepted." is output and the command cannot be executed.

10.2.2 esfimportdisplay (configuration import status display command)

Name

esfimportdisplay - Displays the status of operation of configuration information from the previous Version.

Format

Windows environment

```
$INS_DIR\Common\bin\esfimportdisplay
```

(\$INS_DIR is the program directory from the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.)

Solaris environment, Linux environment

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/esfimportdisplay
```

Function description

Display the import status of the devices configuration information from the previous version level. OS Administrator permissions are required in order to execute the command.

The information displayed is as follows:

- Import process status
The status of the process of configuration information import into previous version level is displayed.

Title	Displayed contents
IMPORT STATUS	Configuration information import status Request : the configuration import request has been received Execute : the configuration information import process is executing Complete : the configuration information import is complete

- Specified device import status
The importation status for the configuration information of the specified device from the previous version is displayed.

Title	Displayed contents
CATEGORY	Device category. storage : storage fcswitch : fibre channel switch server : server library : tape library
DEVICE NAME	Name of the device
IP ADDRESS	IP address of the device
REGISTER MODE	Device registration mode Auto : Automatic registration Manual : Manual registration
STATUS	Import status for the specified device

Title	Displayed contents
	Wait : Paused Execute : Executing Complete : Completed Failed : Failed (Note)

Note: For details, refer to the Web Console Operation History.

Return value

=0 : Normal end

Example of execution

Windows environment

```
> C:\ETERNUS_SF\Common\bin\esfimportdisplay
```

```
-----  
IMPORT STATUS  
-----
```

```
Complete  
-----
```

```
-----  
CATEGORY    DEVICE NAME      IP ADDRESS      REGISTER MODE  STATUS  
-----  
server      WIN-IJP9VFKMUQQ 10.xxx.xxx.xxx Manual         Complete  
server      fujitsu-7370c8b 10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     ETERNUSDX80     10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     DX90S2          10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     EMJ3#13         10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     DX410S2        10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     DX440S2        10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
storage     DX90_6_5       10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
fcswitch    sn200_6_8      10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
fcswitch    SN200_02       10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
fcswitch    Switch         10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
library     LT270          10.xxx.xxx.xxx Auto           Complete  
-----
```

10.3 What to do when configuration import is not possible

When the configuration information cannot be imported with the command, they can be registered as described below:

No.	Information that cannot be imported	Action
1	User name/password	Register the username and password with the following procedure: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Web Console. 2. Select the specified device, and click [Reset Password] in the Action pane. Register the username and password for the device.
2	AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module configuration	Register the configuration information with the following procedure: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Delete the existing registered information with the acarray remove command.

No.	Information that cannot be imported	Action
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Register the ETERNUS Disk storage system in AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module with the <code>acarray add</code> command. Set the ETERNUS Disk storage system name as the ETERNUS name. 3. Log into the Web Console. 4. If the username and password are not set for the specified device, click [Reset Password] in the Action pane and register the username and password. 5. Execute the [Reload Conf.] command in the Action pane.
3	iSCSI HBA information	<p>Register the iSCSI HBA information with the following procedure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Web Console. 2. Select the server where the iSCSI HBA is configured, click [Add] under [HBA] in the Action pane and set the HBA information.



See

- For details on the instructions regarding the Web Console operations, refer to "Web Console Operation Method" in the "ETERNUS SF Web Console Guide" for this version level.
- For details on the `acarray remove` command and `acarray add` command, refer to "Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module" for this version level.

10.4 What to do when an error occurs

The results of the import process are output in the Web Console Operation History. To try and import again the devices for which the import process has failed, execute the [Device re-reading] operation after the message has been output in the Operation History.

If the import status does not change or nothing is displayed, there is a possibility of this product malfunctioning. Check that there is no error message in the Web Console Event log.

Appendix A Operation for Previous Version Environment

A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)

Save the repository data to the specified directory all at once.
Perform this operation on the Storage Management Server.

Note

- Create a directory in which data will be saved in advance.
- Terminal service (via a remote desktop connection)

If the operating system for the Storage Management Server is Windows Server 2003, the Terminal Service must connect to a console session. Refer to the following links for information on how to make console session connections:

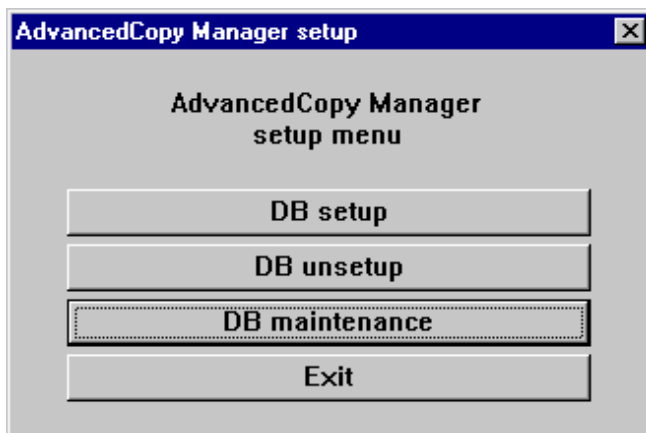
<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/947723>

<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/278845>

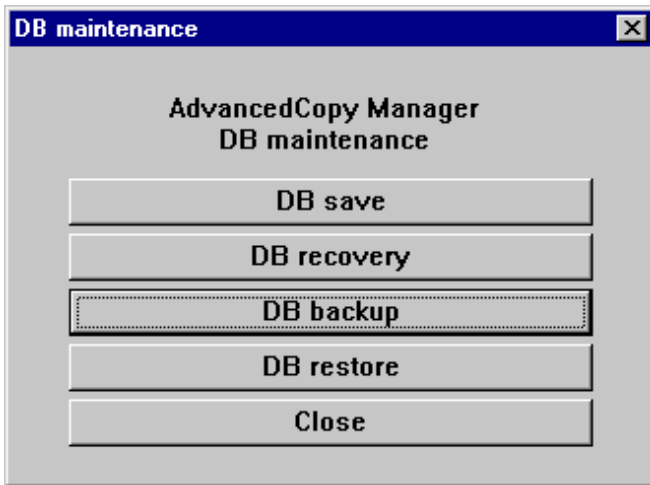
- Do not use the telnet server service.
This operation will fail when issued from the telnet server service.

The procedure is shown below:

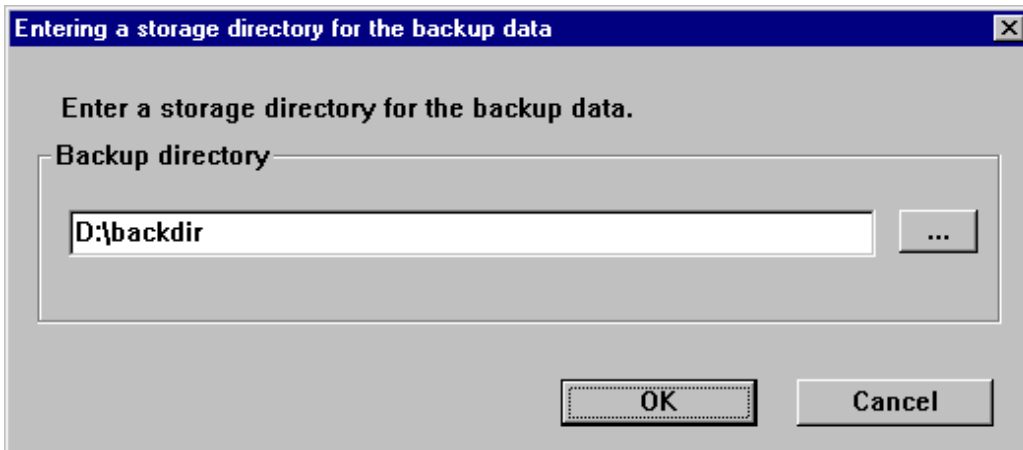
1. Click the [Start] button and select [Programs] -> [AdvancedCopy Manager] or [ETERNUS SF Manager] -> [DB Setup].
2. The following screen is displayed.
Click the [DB maintenance] button.



- The following screen is displayed.
Click the [DB backup] button.



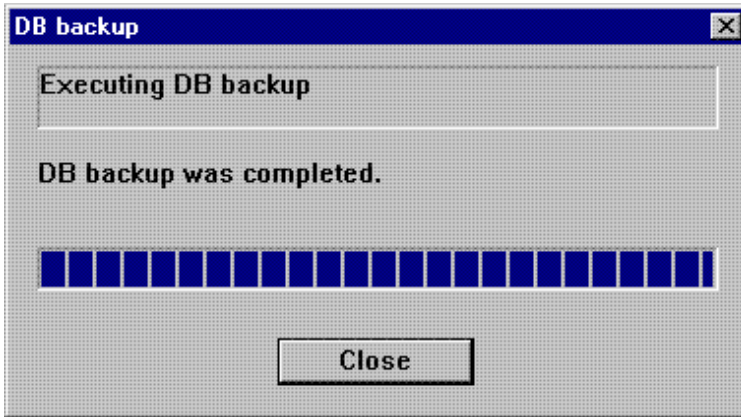
- The following screen is displayed.
Enter a backup directory and click the [OK] button.



- The following screen is displayed.
Check that the displayed information is correct and click the [Start] button.



- The following screen is displayed after the process is completed.
Click the [Close] button.



- Click the [Close] button displayed in step 3 to complete the DB maintenance.
- Click the [Exit] button displayed in step 2 to complete the DB backup.
- Check that the backup of database has been completed successfully.
Make sure that the file with ".unl" extension is created in the specified directory.

A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)

Save the repository data to the specified directory all at once.
Perform this operation on the Storage Management Server.



Note

- Create a directory in which data will be saved in advance.
- Perform this operation as a root user.
- Perform this operation with the locale specified when you installed the Storage Management Server. If Symfoware has been installed in advance, perform this operation with the locale specified at the time of installing Symfoware.

The procedure is shown below:

- Execute the following command.

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stgdbbackup
```

- The following message is displayed.
To continue processing, enter "y". To stop processing, enter "n".

```

////////////////////////////////////
AdvancedCopy Manager Storage Management Server ( **** )
Database backup
////////////////////////////////////

+-----+
|
| All of the stored data will be saved in an external file.
|
| [Notes]
| Prepare a directory for storing the data to be saved.
|
+-----+

```

```
Do you want to continue with processing? [y/n] ==> y
```

- The following message is displayed.
Enter the absolute path name of the directory for storing the data to be saved.

```
////////////////////////////////////  
AdvancedCopy Manager Storage Management Server ( **** )  
Database backup  
////////////////////////////////////  
  
Enter the absolute path name of the directory  
for storing the data to be saved.  
  
Enter ==> /storage/backdir
```

Note

If the saved data exists in the directory, the processing is not performed.
Delete the saved data in the directory or specify another directory to retry the processing.

- The following message is displayed.
Enter "y" to continue processing or "n" to stop processing.
When you enter "n", the screen returns step 2.

```
////////////////////////////////////  
AdvancedCopy Manager Storage Management Server ( **** )  
Database backup  
////////////////////////////////////  
  
Directory containing the saved data : /storage/backdir  
  
Do you want to continue with processing? [y/n] ==> y
```

- The processing is performed and the execution results are displayed on the screen.
The following example is for the execution result.

```
///// AdvancedCopy Manager database backup /////  
  
=====
```

```
DB data backup will start.  
=====
```

```
....  
Unloading of data is complete.(base)  
...  
Unloading of data is complete.(backup)  
.  
Unloading of data is complete.(repl)
```

```
=====
```

```
Backup of DB data is complete.  
=====
```

```
Database backup ended normally.  
  
#
```

- Check that the backup of database has been completed successfully.
Make sure that the file with ".unl" extension is created in the specified directory.

A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)

Save the management information which exists in the Storage Server.

If a backup operation has been done

1. Check the data size of the backup management list under the following directory:

- If the Storage Server is in a non-cluster environment:

<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data

- If the Storage Server is in a cluster environment:

<Drive letter of shared disk for shared data for AdvancedCopy Manager>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data

If you were backing up Symfoware databases, also check the file sizes in the target directory for output of the recovery control file.

2. Save the device.ini file.

Save the following file by using the copy command:

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
device.ini	<i><Environment directory></i> \etc\device.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
device.ini	<i><shared disk></i> :\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\device.ini

3. Save the backup management list.

Specify the directory which can store the data size checked in step 1 and execute the following command:

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\swstresback <save directory>
```



For details on commands, refer to manuals according to the previous operating environment's version level.

- In the case of 14.2 or earlier

"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".

- In the case of 15.0 or later

"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".

4. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts and specification files.

Save the following files by using the copy command:

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function

- Transaction volume locking specification file for backups

- Backup volume locking specification file for backups

- Backup-restored volume locking specification file

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	<i><Environment directory></i> \etc\backup\scripts\OpcBackupPre.js <i><Environment directory></i> \etc\backup\scripts\OpcBackupPost.js <i><Environment directory></i> \etc\backup\scripts\OpcRestorePre.js <i><Environment directory></i> \etc\backup\scripts\OpcRestorePost.js

File for save	File name
Transaction volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\BTRANLOCK.INI
Backup volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\BBACKLOCK.INI
Backup-restored volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\RDSTLOCK.INI

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\scripts\OpcBackupPre.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\scripts\OpcBackupPost.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\scripts\OpcRestorePre.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\scripts\OpcRestorePost.js
Transaction volume locking specification file for backups	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\BTRANLOCK.INI
Backup volume locking specification file for backups	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\BBACKLOCK.INI
Backup-restored volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\RDSTLOCK.INI

If a replication operation has been done

1. Save the device.ini file.

Save the following file by using the copy command:

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
device.ini	<Environment directory>\etc\device.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
device.ini	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\device.ini

2. Save the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Storage Management Server. For this reason, if the repository data has been saved when migrating the Storage Management Server, this step is not required.

If the repository data on the Storage Management Server has not been saved, perform the operation with reference to the following:

- If the Storage Management Server is in Windows environment:
"A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)"
- If the Storage Management Server is in Solaris, Linux environment:
"A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)"

3. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts and specification files.

Save the following files by using the copy command:

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function
- Copy source volume locking specification file

- Copy destination volume locking specification file
- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\scripts\RepSrcPre.js <Environment directory>\etc\repl\scripts\RepDstPre.js <Environment directory>\etc\repl\scripts\RepSrcPost.js <Environment directory>\etc\repl\scripts\RepDstPost.js
Copy source volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\SRLOCK.INI
Copy destination volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\DSTLOCK.INI
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\DEFAULT\check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\scripts\RepSrcPre.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\scripts\RepDstPre.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\scripts\RepSrcPost.js <shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\scripts\RepDstPost.js
Copy source volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\SRLOCK.INI
Copy destination volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\DSTLOCK.INI
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\DEFAULT\check.ini

Note

There is incompatibility in the copy source volume locking specification file between Version 14.2 or earlier and this version. If the previous environment's version level is 14.2 or earlier, change the settings of file by referring to "[Changes to the processing of the swsrpmake \(Replication creation command\) and swsrpcancel \(Replication cancellation command\)](#)" in "[2.3.2 Changes for Version 15.0](#)", and then perform the backup.

- If using the backup and the restoration function of the Exchange Database, save the following management information:
 - Drive letter map file
 - Device definition file (Windows Server 2003 environment only)

File for save	File name
Drive letter map file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\EXDMAP.INI
Device definition file	<Environment directory>\etc\eternus_hardope.def

A.4 Backup of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

Save the management information which exists in the Storage Server.

If a backup operation has been done

1. Check the data size of the backup management list under the following directory:

- If the Storage Server is in a non-cluster environment:
/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/data
- If the Storage Server is in a cluster environment:
/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/data

If you were backing up Symfoware databases, also check the file sizes in the target directory for output of the recovery control file.

 **Point**

When you use the directory which has been saved as the save directory before, at least three times greater than the size calculated above is required.

2. Save the backup management list.

Specify the directory which can store the data size checked in step 1 and execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsts/bin/swstresback <save directory>
```

 **See**

For details on commands, refer to manuals according to the previous operating environment's version level.

- In the case of 14.2 or earlier
"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".
- In the case of 15.0 or later
"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".

3. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts.

Save the following files by using the cp command:

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcBackup.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcBackup.post /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcRestore.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcRestore.post

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcBackup.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcBackup.post /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcRestore.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcRestore.post

If a replication operation has been done

1. Save the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Storage Management Server. For this reason, if the repository data has been saved when migrating the Storage Management Server, this step is not required.

If the repository data on the Storage Management Serve has not been saved, perform the operation with reference to the following:

- If the Storage Management Server is in Windows environment:
"A.1 Backup of repository data (for Windows)"
- If the Storage Management Server is in Solaris, Linux environment:
"A.2 Backup of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)"

2. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts and specification files.

Save the following files by using the cp command:

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function
- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepSrc.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepDst.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepSrc.post /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepDst.post
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepSrc.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepDst.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepSrc.post /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepDst.post
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

Save the management information which exists in the Storage Server.

If a backup operation has been done

1. Check the data size of the backup management list under the following directory:

- If the Storage Server is in a non-cluster environment:
/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/data
- If the Storage Server is in a cluster environment:
/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/data

2. Save the backup management list.

Specify the directory which can store the data size checked in step 1 and execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsts/bin/swstresback <save directory>
```



See

For details on commands, refer to manuals according to the previous operating environment's version level.

- In the case of 14.2 or earlier
"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operator's Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".
- In the case of 15.0 or later
"ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" in the "swstresback (Resource backup command)".

3. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts.

Save the following files by using the cp command.

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcBackup.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcBackup.post
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcRestore.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/sh/OpcRestore.post

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcBackup.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcBackup.post
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcRestore.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsts/<logical-node-name>/sh/OpcRestore.post

If a replication operation has been done

1. Save the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Storage Management Server. For this reason, if the repository data has been saved when migrating the Storage Management Server, this step is not required.

If the repository data on the Storage Management Server has not been saved, perform the operation with reference to the following:

- If the Storage Management Server is in Windows environment:
["A.1 Backup of repository data \(for Windows\)"](#)
- If the Storage Management Server is in Solaris, Linux environment:
["A.2 Backup of repository data \(for Solaris, Linux\)"](#)

2. Save pre-processing and post-processing scripts and specification files.

Save the following files by using the cp command:

- Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function
- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepSrc.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepDst.pre
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepSrc.post
	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/sh/RepDst.post
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for save	File name
Pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepSrc.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepDst.pre /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepSrc.post /etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/sh/RepDst.post
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

A.6 Backup of the environment setting files

Save the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module.

It is unnecessary to save files which are not listed in the following table.

In case of non-cluster operation

Copy the following files to any directory.

For Windows environment:

[AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Version 14.2 or earlier]

File name	Remarks
- \$INS_DIR\etc\db\eternus.xml - All files under \$INS_DIR\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$INS_DIR\etc\prop\user.properties - \$INS_DIR\etc\stxc.alias - \$INS_DIR\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.
- \$INS_DIR\var\micc\database\DeviceRegList.xml	

\$INS_DIR is the "Program Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

[AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Version 15.0 or later]

File name	Remarks
- \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\db\eternus.xml - All files under \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\prop\user.properties - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc_ext.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.
- \$TMP_DIR\CCM\var\micc\database\DeviceRegList.xml	

\$ENV_DIR is the "Environment Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

\$TMP_DIR is the "Work Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

For Solaris, Linux environment:

[AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Version 14.2 or earlier]

File name	Remarks
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/eternus.xml - All files under /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.
- /var/opt/FJSVccm/micc/database/DeviceRegList.xml	

[AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module Version 15.0 or later]

File name	Remarks
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/eternus.xml - All files under /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc_ext.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.
- /var/opt/FJSVccm/micc/database/DeviceRegList.xml	

In case of cluster operation

Copy the following files to any directory.

For Windows environment:

File name	Remarks
- \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\db\eternus.xml - All files under \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\prop\user.properties - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc.alias - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc_ext.alias - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.
- \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\var\micc\database\DeviceRegList.xml	
- \$INS_DIR\micc\sys\install.sys - \$INS_DIR\bin\stxc_install.sys - \$INS_DIR\sys\sys.properties - \$INS_DIR\noncluster\micc\sys\install.sys - \$INS_DIR\noncluster\bin\stxc_install.sys - \$INS_DIR\noncluster\sys\sys.properties	Do not restore using the procedure described at "Restoring environment settings files" or "Changing the cluster environment" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module".

\$\$SHARE_DL is the drive letter of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

\$\$SHARE_TOP is the directory that contains "Environment Directory" and "Work Directory" of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

\$INS_DIR is the "Program Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

For Solaris, Linux environment:

File name	Remarks
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/eternus.xml - All files under \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc_ext.alias - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf 	Only when files exist.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - \$\$SHARE_MNT/var/opt/FJSVccm/micc/database/DeviceRegList.xml 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - /opt/FJSVccm/micc/sys/.install.sys - /opt/FJSVccm/bin/.stxc_install.sys - /opt/FJSVccm/sys/sys.properties - /opt/FJSVccm/noncluster/micc/sys/.install.sys - /opt/FJSVccm/noncluster/bin/.stxc_install.sys - /opt/FJSVccm/noncluster/sys/sys.properties 	Do not restore using the procedure described at "Restoring environment settings files" or "Changing the cluster environment" in the "ETERNUS SF Operation Guide for Copy Control Module".

\$\$SHARE_MNT is the mount point of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

A.7 Unsetup of database

Perform the database unsetup to delete the database, its environment or cancel the repository settings.



Note

- Terminal service (via a remote desktop connection)

If the operating system for the Storage Management Server is Windows Server 2003, the Terminal Service must connect to a console session. Refer to the following links for information on how to make console session connections:

<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/947723>
<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/278845>

- Do not use the telnet server service.
This operation will fail when issued from the telnet server service.
- When another software is monitoring Symfoware, stop Symfoware monitoring before executing the database unsetup.
During Symfoware monitoring, the database unsetup may fail.

The procedure is shown below:

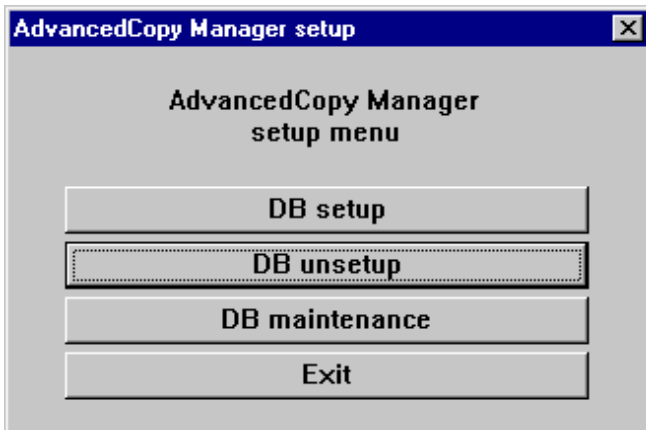
1. Log on the server where the database unsetup will be performed.

For installing AdvancedCopy Manager of the previous version level, log on the server as the user that has been specified when setting the database information.

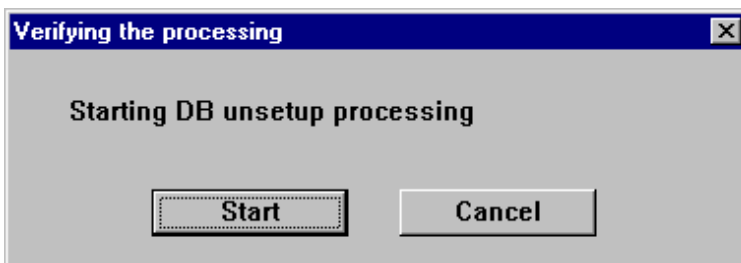
If you log on the server with another user, this operation may fail.

2. Click the [Start] button and select [Programs] -> [AdvancedCopy Manager] or [ETERNUS SF Manager] -> [DB Setup].

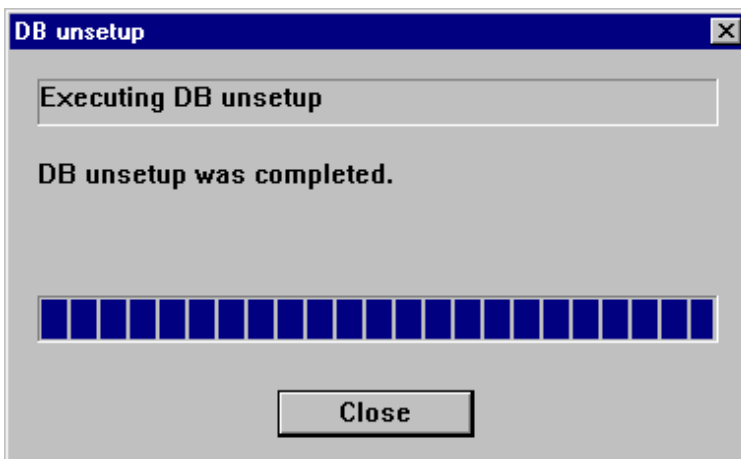
- The following screen is displayed.
Click the [DB unsetup] button.



- The following screen is displayed.
Click the [Start] button.



- When the processing is completed, the following screen is displayed.
Click the [Close] button.



- Finish the database unsetup by clicking the [Exit] button on the screen displayed in step 3.

A.8 Cancel of repository settings

Delete the database and its environment to cancel the repository configurations.



- Perform this operation as a root user.

- When the Storage Management Server is operated on the clustered system, the repository configurations are cancelled by deleting the Storage Management Server transaction. Therefore, it is unnecessary to carry out this operation.
- Perform this operation with the locale specified when you installed the Storage Management Server. If Symfoware has been installed in advance, perform this operation with the locale specified at the time of installing Symfoware.
- When another software is monitoring Symfoware, stop Symfoware monitoring before executing the database unsetup. During Symfoware monitoring, the database unsetup may fail.

The procedure is shown below:

1. Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/swstorage/bin/stgdbunset
```

2. The following message is displayed.

To continue processing, enter "y". To stop processing, enter "n".

```

////////////////////////////////////
      AdvancedCopy Manager Storage management server ( **** )
                Database unsetup
////////////////////////////////////

+-----+
|       |
| All of database environments of AdvancedCopy Manager |
| will be deleted. |
|       |
| [Notes] |
|   Once processing has started, all stored data is discarded. |
|   Make sure that the environment allows execution |
|   before proceeding. |
|       |
+-----+

Do you want to continue with processing? [y/n] ==>

```

3. Deletion of the Storage Management Server database is executed and the execution results are displayed on the screen. The following example is for the execution result.



If an RDA-SV definition file overwrite confirmation message is displayed on the screen during processing, enter "y".

```

///// AdvancedCopy Manager database unsetup /////

Activation of RDB is complete.
=====
The replication management will be deleted.
=====

=====
Clearing of database will start. (replication management)
=====
.
Tables have been deleted. (replication management)
=====
Clearing of database is complete. (replication management)
=====

=====
The replication management has been deleted.

```

```

=====
:
=====
Clearing of database environment is complete.
=====

=====
The basic section has been deleted.
=====

Database unsetup ended normally.

```

A.9 Restore of repository data (for Windows)

Restore the repository data from the specified directory.
 Perform this operation on the Management Server.

The procedure is shown below:

1. Restore the repository data.

Execute stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command) to recover the migration target repository data to the current version repository.

```
C:\> <Program directory>\ACM\bin\stgrepcnv -d <save directory>
```



For details on the command, refer to "stgrepcnv (Repository data migration command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmodsrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmodsrv (Server information change command).

Check the [Server] column of stgxfwcmdisprv (Server information display command) execution result for the Management Server name specified to the -n option.

```
C:\> <Program directory>\ACM\bin\stgxfwcmodsrv -n <Management Server name>
```



For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmodsrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

A.10 Restore of repository data (for Solaris, Linux)

Restore the repository data from the specified directory.
 Perform this operation on the Management Server.

The procedure is shown below:

1. Restore the repository data.

Execute stgrepocnv (Repository data migration command) to recover the migration target repository data to the current version repository.

```
# /opt/FJVSvswstf/bin/stgrepocnv -d <save directory>
```



For details on the command, refer to "stgrepocnv (Repository data migration command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Change the server information.

To ensure data consistency, use stgxfwcmmosrv (Server information change command) to perform the server information change processing.

Specify the Management Server name to the -n option and execute stgxfwcmmosrv (Server information change command).

Check the [Server] column of stgxfwcmdisprv (Server information display command) execution result for the Management Server name specified to the -n option.

```
# /opt/FJVSvswstf/bin/stgxfwcmmosrv -n <Management Server name>
```



For details on the command, refer to "stgxfwcmmosrv (Server information change command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

A.11 Restore of management information (for Windows)

Restore the management information which exists in the Managed Server.

If a backup operation has been done

1. Restore the device.ini file.

Restore the device.ini file saved in "A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)" by using the copy command.

In the case of non-cluster operation on Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\device.ini

In the case of non-cluster operation on Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<Environment directory>\etc\device.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\device.ini

2. Restore the backup management list.

Specify the directory saved in "A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)" and execute the following command:

In the case of Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

```
C:\> <Program directory>\ACM\bin\swstresrst <save directory>
```

In the case of Managed Server

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\swstresrst <save directory>
```



For details on the command, refer to "swstresrst (Resource restore command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

3. Restore specification files.

Restore the following files saved in "A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)" by using the copy command:

- Transaction volume locking specification file for backups
- Backup volume locking specification file for backups
- Backup-restored volume locking specification file

In the case of non-cluster operation on Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Transaction volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\backup\data\BTRANLOCK.INI
Backup volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\backup\data\BBACKLOCK.INI
Backup-restored volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\backup\data\RDSTLOCK.INI

In the case of non-cluster operation on Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Transaction volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\BTRANLOCK.INI
Backup volume locking specification file for backups	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\BBACKLOCK.INI
Backup-restored volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\backup\data\RDSTLOCK.INI

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Transaction volume locking specification file for backups	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\BTRANLOCK.INI
Backup volume locking specification file for backups	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\BBACKLOCK.INI
Backup-restored volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\backup\data\RDSTLOCK.INI



Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.

If a replication operation has been done

1. Restore the device.ini file. No need to restore this file if you have already restored it in "If a backup operation has been done".

Restore the device.ini file saved in "A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)" by using the copy command.

In the case of non-cluster operation on Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\device.ini

In the case of non-cluster operation on Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<Environment directory>\etc\device.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
device.ini	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\device.ini

2. Restore the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Management Server. Execute the following command:

In the case of Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

```
C:\> <Program directory>\ACM\bin\swsrprecoverres -r
```

In the case of Managed Server

```
C:\> <Program directory>\bin\swsrprecoverres -r
```



For details on the command, refer to "swsrprecoverres (Resource adjustment command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

3. Restore specification files.

Restore the following files saved in "A.3 Backup of management information (for Windows)" by using the copy command:

- Copy source volume locking specification file
- Copy destination volume locking specification file
- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation on Management Server which also serves as a Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Copy source volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\repl\data\SRCLOCK.INI
Copy destination volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\repl\data\DSTLOCK.INI
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	<Environment directory>\ACM\etc\repl\data\DEFAULT\check.ini

In the case of non-cluster operation on Managed Server

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Copy source volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\SRLOCK.INI
Copy destination volume locking specification file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\DSTLOCK.INI
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\DEFAULT\check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Copy source volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\SRLOCK.INI
Copy destination volume locking specification file	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\DSTLOCK.INI
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	<shared disk>:\etc\opt\swstorage\etc\repl\data\DEFAULT\check.ini

Note

Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.

- If using the backup and the restoration function of the Exchange Database, restore the following management information:
 - Drive letter map file
 - Device definition file (Windows Server 2003 environment only)

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Drive letter map file	<Environment directory>\etc\repl\data\EXDMAP.INI
Device definition file	<Environment directory>\etc\eternus_hardope.def

A.12 Restore of management information (for Solaris, Linux)

Restore the management information which exists in the Managed Server.

Note

Caution regarding the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent in Linux environment

For environments in which udev devices exist, prioritize and use the following udev device names after upgrade.

- normal device
- PRIMECLUSTER GDS SDX object (operating time of slice unit only)

For details of udev device names, refer to "Managing a Device on AdvancedCopy Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Linux)".

If you had used compatible device names before the upgrade, perform the following actions depending on the device names using after the upgrade:

- For operations that use compatible device names:

Use `stgxfwcmsetmode` (Information collection mode configuration command) to change the information collection mode such that udev device names are not used.

For details of changing the information collection mode, refer to "Managing a Device on AdvancedCopy Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Linux)".

- For operations that use udev device names:

Delete the backup management definition information and replication management definition information, and fetch the udev device names. Then, it is necessary to redefine the backup and replication using udev device names.

For the procedures, refer to "Changing the device configuration" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for Linux)".



If a backup operation has been done

1. Restore the backup management list.

Specify the directory saved in "[A.4 Backup of management information \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)" and execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsts/bin/swstresrst <save directory>
```



For details on the command, refer to "swstresrst (Resource restore command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts.



Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.



If a replication operation has been done

1. Restore the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Management Server. Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsrp/bin/swsrprecoverres -r
```



For details on the command, refer to "swsrprecoverres (Resource adjustment command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Restore specification files.

Restore the following files saved in "[A.4 Backup of management information \(for Solaris, Linux\)](#)" by using the copy command:

- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

Note

Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.

A.13 Restore of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)

Restore the management information which exists in the Managed Server.

Note

Caution regarding the AdvancedCopy Manager's agent in HP-UX environment

- If using HP-UX 11i v2 or earlier:

Fetch the device information. If new devices, modified devices or deleted devices are detected, perform the reflective operation if necessary. For details on how to fetch device information, refer to "Fetching device information on a Managed Server" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX)".

- If using HP-UX 11i v3 or later:

In HP-UX 11i v3 or later, as a device format, there are two device names: new format and legacy format. For details on device names, refer to "Managing a Device on AdvancedCopy Manager" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX)". Depending on the device format, perform the procedure below.

- If using a different format device name before and after upgrade:

Before upgrading, set the device format using `stgxfwcmsetmode` (Information collection mode configuration command), and then delete the definition for the backup management and replication management. After that, set the device format used after upgrading using `stgxfwcmsetmode` (Information collection mode configuration command), and then fetch the device information and redefine the backup management and replication management.

For details on setting the information collection mode, refer to "Configuration Management Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX)".

For details on backup management and replication management, refer to "Changing the device configuration" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX)".

- If using the same format device name before and after upgrade:

Even if using the same format device name as before upgrade, always set up the device format being used by executing the `stgxfwcmsetmode` (Information collection mode configuration command).

For details on setting the information collection mode, refer to "Configuration Management Commands" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide (for HP-UX)".

If a backup operation has been done

1. Restore the backup management list.

Specify the directory saved in "A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)" and execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsts/bin/swstresrst <save directory>
```



For details on the command, refer to "swstresrst (Resource restore command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts.



Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for backup management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.

If a replication operation has been done

1. Restore the replication management list.

The replication management list is stored in the repository on the Management Server. Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVswsrp/bin/swsrprecoverres -r
```



For details on the command, refer to "swsrprecoverres (Resource adjustment command)" in the "ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager Operation Guide" for this version level.

2. Restore specification files.

Restore the following files saved in "A.5 Backup of management information (for HP-UX, AIX)" by using the cp command:

- Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function (for AdvancedCopy Manager Version 13.4 or later only)

In the case of non-cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/data/DEFAULT/check.ini

In the case of cluster operation

File for restoration	Full path name for restoration destination
Timeout value setting file for the concurrent suspend function	/etc/opt/FJSVswsrp/<logical-node-name>/data/DEFAULT/check.ini



Do not restore pre-processing and post-processing scripts for replication management function by using copy command.

The sample of pre-processing and post-processing scripts may be changed when upgrading a version. If you have customized pre-processing and post-processing scripts before the upgrade, re-customize it in reference to pre-processing and post-processing scripts which has been saved before the upgrade.

A.14 Restore of the environment setting files

Restore the environment setting files for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module saved in "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)".

In case of non-cluster operation

Restore the environment setting files according to the following procedure.

1. Delete the following files.

- For Windows environment:

File name	Remarks
- All files under \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\prop\user.properties - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc_ext.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.

\$ENV_DIR is the "Environment Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

- For Solaris, Linux environments:

File name	Remarks
- All files under /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/acc/etx/stxc.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/acc/etx/stxc_ext.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/acc/etx/stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.

2. Copy the files which are saved in "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)" to the following files and directories:

- For Windows environment:

File name	Remarks
- \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\db\eternus.xml - All files under \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\prop\user.properties - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxc_ext.alias - \$ENV_DIR\CCM\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files were backed up.
- \$TMP_DIR\CCM\var\micc\database\DeviceRegList.xml	

\$ENV_DIR is the "Environment Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.
 \$TMP_DIR is the "Work Directory" as specified during AdvancedCopy Manager CCM installation.

- For Solaris, Linux environments:

File name	Remarks
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/eternus.xml - All files under /etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- /etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc_ext.alias - /etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf	Only when files were backed up.
- /var/opt/FJSVccm/micc/database/DeviceRegList.xml	

The restoration for the environment setting files is completed.

In case of cluster operation

Restore the environment setting files according to the following procedure.

1. Delete the following files.

- For Windows environment:

File name	Remarks
- All files under %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\db\cg directory	
- %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\prop\user.properties - %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc.alias - %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc_ext.alias - %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.

%SHARE_DL is the drive letter of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

%SHARE_TOP is the directory that contains "Environment Directory" and "Work Directory" of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

- For Solaris, Linux environments:

File name	Remarks
- All files under %SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- %SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - %SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - %SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc_ext.alias - %SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf	Only when files exist.

%SHARE_MNT is the mount point of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

2. Copy the files which are saved in "[A.6 Backup of the environment setting files](#)" to the following files and directories:

- For Windows environment:

File name	Remarks
- %SHARE_DL:%SHARE_TOP\etc\db\eternus.xml	

File name	Remarks
- All files under \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\db\cg directory	
- \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\prop\user.properties - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc.alias - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxc_ext.alias - \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\etc\stxcvolinf	Only when files were backed up.
- \$\$SHARE_DL:\$\$SHARE_TOP\var\micc\database\DeviceRegList.xml	

\$\$SHARE_DL is the drive letter of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

\$\$SHARE_TOP is the directory that contains "Environment Directory" and "Work Directory" of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

- For Solaris, Linux environments:

File name	Remarks
- \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/eternus.xml - All files under \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/db/cg directory	
- \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/prop/user.properties - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc.alias - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxc_ext.alias - \$\$SHARE_MNT/etc/opt/FJSVccm/accc/etc/stxcvolinf	Only when files were backed up.
- \$\$SHARE_MNT/var/opt/FJSVccm/micc/database/DeviceRegList.xml	

\$\$SHARE_MNT is the mount point of the shared disk for AdvancedCopy Manager CCM shared data.

The restoration for the environment setting files is completed.

A.15 Backup of common control repository (for Windows)

Save the common control repository.



Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

1. Stop the ETERNUS SF Express Tomcat service.

Open Service Control Manager to stop the following service.

- ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat Service

2. Create backup data.

1. Using Explorer, create the following backup directories:

- \$BAK_DIR\Common

- From a user with OS Administrator privilege, execute the following command to create backup data.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

The file name of the created backup data is *<file_name>*.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\sys\postgres\bin\pg_dump -U esfpostgres -C --attribute-inserts -p <port number> -f $BAK_DIR\Common\<file_name> esfdb
```

- The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings.

```
master01!
```

- Start the ETERNUS SF Express Tomcat service.

Open Service Control Manager to start the following service.

- ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat Service

A.16 Backup of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux)

Save the common control repository.



Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.

- Stop the ETERNUS SF Manager Web service.

Execute the following shell script to stop the service.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/stop-webservice.sh
```

- Create backup data.

- Create the following backup directories:

```
mkdir -p $BAK_DIR/Common
```

- From a user with OS Administrator privilege, execute the following command to create backup data.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

The file name of the created backup data is *<file_name>*.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/postgres/bin/pg_dump -U esfpostgres -C --attribute-inserts -p <port number> -f $BAK_DIR/Common/<file_name> esfdb
```

- The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings.

```
master01!
```

- Start the ETERNUS SF Manager Web service.

Execute the following shell script to start the service.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/start-webservice.sh
```

A.17 Backup of license management database (for Windows)

Save the license management database.

Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

- Using Explorer, create the following backup directories:
 - \$BAK_DIR\LM
- From a user with OS Administrator privilege, execute the following command to create backup data.
The file name of the created backup data is *<file_name>*.

```
$INS_DIR\LM\bin\esflm backup $BAK_DIR\LM\<file_name>
```

A.18 Backup of license management database (for Solaris, Linux)

Save the license management database.

Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.

- Create the following backup directories:

```
mkdir -p $BAK_DIR/LM
```
- From a user with OS Administrator privilege, execute the following command to create backup data.
The file name of the created backup data is *<file_name>*.

```
/opt/FJSVesflm/bin/esflm backup $BAK_DIR/LM/<file_name>
```

A.19 Restore of common control repository (for Windows)

Restore the common control repository.

Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

1. Stop the ETERNUS SF Express Tomcat service.

Open Service Control Manager to stop the following service.

- ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat Service

2. Restore the backup data. The following procedure must be implemented by a user with administrator privileges for the operating system.

1. Execute the following command.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\sys\postgres\bin\psql -U esfpostgres -p <port number> postgres
```

2. The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings in order.

```
master01!
drop database esfdb;
\q
```

3. Execute the following command to restore the backup data.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
$INS_DIR\Common\sys\postgres\bin\psql -U esfpostgres -p <port number> -f $BAK_DIR\Common
\<file_name> postgres
```

4. The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings.

```
master01!
```

3. Start the ETERNUS SF Express Tomcat service.

Open Service Control Manager to start the following service.

- ETERNUS SF Manager Tomcat Service



Note

After restoring the shared control repository, it takes approximately 2 minutes before the Web Console becomes available.

A.20 Restore of common control repository (for Solaris, Linux)

Restore the common control repository.



Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.

1. Stop the ETERNUS SF Manager Web service.

Execute the following shell script to stop the service.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/stop-webservice.sh
```

2. Restore the backup data. The following procedure must be implemented by a user with administrator privileges for the operating system.
3. Execute the following command.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/postgres/bin/psql -U esfpostgres -p <port number> postgres
```

1. The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings in order.

```
master01!
drop database esfdb;
\q
```

2. Execute the following command to restore the backup data.

If you did not change the port number, specify 15432 for *<port number>*. If you did change the port number, specify the changed port number for *<port number>*.

The *<file_name>* is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/postgres/bin/psql -U esfpostgres -p <port number> -f $BAK_DIR/Common/
<file_name> postgres
```

3. The prompt is displayed, and waiting for input. Input the following strings.

```
master01!
```

4. Start the ETERNUS SF Manager Web service.

Execute the following shell script to start the service.

```
/opt/FJSVesfcm/bin/start-webservice.sh
```



Note

After restoring the shared control repository, it takes approximately 2 minutes before the Web Console becomes available.

A.21 Restore of license management database (for Windows)

Restore the license management database.



Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.

Directory name	Explanation
\$INS_DIR	"Program Directory" specified at the ETERNUS SF Manager installation.

Execute the following command with administrator privileges for the operating system.
 The <file_name> is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
$INS_DIR\LM\bin\esflm restore $BAK_DIR\LM\<file_name>
```

A.22 Restore of license management database (for Solaris, Linux)

Restore the license management database.

Information

About the notation in procedure

Directory name	Explanation
\$BAK_DIR	Backup destination directory.

Execute the following command with administrator privileges for the operating system.
 The <file_name> is the file name specified when the backup data was created.

```
/opt/FJSVesflm/bin/esflm restore $BAK_DIR/LM/<file_name>
```

Appendix B Install parameter

This appendix explains the install parameter file and the details of each install parameter.

B.1 Install parameter file (for ETERNUS SF Manager)

The sample of the install parameter file is provided on the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level.

- Stored location

```
<DVD-ROM mount directory>/Manager_unix/install_parameter.txt
```

For changing install parameters, copy the form of the install parameter file in a convenient location and modify the installation information.

The following is the form of the install parameter file.

For the description for the each parameter, refer to "[B.2 Install parameters \(for ETERNUS SF Manager\)](#)".

```
#-----#
# Installation function
#   1: ETERNUS SF Manager
#   2: ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager CCM
#-----#
Installation_function: 1

#-----#
# Character code
#   Solaris:
#     1: EUC
#     2: SJIS
#     3: UTF8
#     NULL: System default
#           (Solaris 9/10 --> EUC
#           Solaris 11 --> UTF8)
#
#   Linux:
#     1: UTF8
#     2: EUC
#     NULL: System default (UTF8)
#-----#
Character_code:

#-----#
# Port number
#   range: 1024 - 65535
#-----#
ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service: 9855
Communications_service_1: 1226
Communications_service_2: 4917
Repository_service_1: 32004
Repository_service_2: 15432
Remote_access_service: 9851
Exclusive_control_service: 9852
Internal_port_1: 28005
Internal_port_2: 28009
Internal_port_3: 28443
Internal_port_4: 24916
Internal_port_5: 24917
```

```

#-----#
# Repository database setup
#   Repository_data_size: Min. 65
#   Management_server_IP_address: format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
#-----#
DB_file_directory: /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
RDB_dictionary_directory: /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
RDB_log_file_directory: /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
Repository_DB_space_directory: /var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
Repository_data_size: 65
Management_server_IP_address:

#-----#
# AdvancedCopy Manager ARCH
#   Linux(RHEL5):
#       NULL: System dependence
#       1: 32bit
#       2: 64bit
#-----#
AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH:

#-----#
# esfpostgres UID
#   For primecluster system:
#       NULL: System allocate
#       integer : range 100-59999
#-----#
esfpostgres_UID:

```

Note

- Only LF is permitted for linefeed code.
Do not use CR+LF or CR.
- Do not use double-byte character such as double-byte space.

B.2 Install parameters (for ETERNUS SF Manager)

The explanation of the install parameters described below:

Parameter name	Description	Default value
Installation_function	When installing ETERNUS SF Manager, set to [1].	1
Character_code	Specify the character encoding used in AdvancedCopy Manager. For Solaris, specify the following numbers corresponding to the character codes. (NOTE 4) - For EUC : [1] - For SJIS : [2] - For UTF8 : [3] For Linux, specify the following numbers corresponding to the character codes.	None (NOTE 5)

Parameter name	Description	Default value
	- For UTF8 : [1] - For EUC : [2]	
ETERNUS_SF_Manager_apache_service	Web Console service port number	9855
Communications_service_1	Communications service 1 port number	1226
Communications_service_2	Communications service 2 port number	4917
Repository_service_1	Repository service 1 port number	32004
Repository_service_2	Repository service 2 port number	15432
Remote_access_service	Remote access service port number	9851
Exclusive_control_service	Exclusive control service port number	9852
Internal_port_1	Port numbers for various internal services	28005
Internal_port_2		28009
Internal_port_3		28443
Internal_port_4		24916
Internal_port_5		24917
DB_file_directory	DB file directory	/var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/db
RDB_dictionary_directory	RDB dictionary directory	/var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dic
RDB_log_file_directory	RDB log file directory	/var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/log
Repository_DB_space_directory	Repository DB space directory	/var/opt/FJSVswstf/sfswstf/dbsp
Repository_data_size	Repository DB size (MB)	65
Management_server_IP_address	Management Server IP address (NOTE 1)	None
AdvancedCopy_Manager_ARCH	Architecture of AdvancedCopy Manager to be installed (NOTE 2)	None
esfpostgres_UID	User ID which ETERNUS SF Manager internally uses on installation of PRIMECLUSTER (NOTE 3)	None

NOTE 1: When the Management Server has two or more IP addresses, specify the IP address which is available for communicating with the Management Server from all of the AdvancedCopy Manager's agents. (For upgrading Storage Cruiser)

NOTE 2: If 32-bit architecture Symfaware is installed on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64), specify "1" to install 32-bit architecture AdvancedCopy Manager. Specify a blank in other cases. (For upgrading Storage Cruiser)

NOTE 3: On installation in PRIMECLUSTER environments, specify an unregistered user ID for the system by using integer number from 100 to 59999. Specify a blank in other cases.

NOTE 4: You can specify "3" for Character_code only in Solaris 11.

NOTE 5: If no number is specified for Character_code (default value), the character code will be as follows:

- For Solaris 9 or Solaris 10 : [EUC]
- For Solaris 11 : [UTF8]
- For Linux : [UTF8]

B.3 Install parameter file (for AdvancedCopy Manager Copy Control Module)

The sample of the install parameter file is provided on the DVD-ROM "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM Mediapack for Solaris (Manager Program)", "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux (Manager Program)" or "ETERNUS SF SC/ACM/Express Mediapack for Linux 64bit (Manager Program)" for this version level.

- Stored location

```
<DVD-ROM mount directory>/Manager_unix/install_parameter_ccm.txt
```

The following is the form of the install parameter file.

```
#-----#
# Installation function
#   1: ETERNUS SF Manager
#   2: ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager CCM
#-----#
Installation_function: 2
```